

ΧΡΥΣΟΥΝ ΜΕΤΑΛΛΙΟΝ ΑΚΑΔΗΜΙΑΣ ΑΘΗΝΩΝ

## ΕΚΠΑΙΔΕΥΤΙΚΟ ΚΕΙΜΕΝΟ ΑΚΑΔΗΜΙΩΝ ΕΜΠΟΡΙΚΟΥ ΝΑΥΤΙΚΟΥ

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR for the Merchant Marine Academies

Part One

Ηλία Πέτρου Τσώνη



## ΙΔΡΥΜΑ ΕΥΓΕΝΙΔΟΥ Χρύδουν μεταλλίου ακαδημίας αθηνών



ΕΚΠΑΙΔΕΥΤΙΚΟ ΚΕΙΜΕΝΟ ΑΚΑΔΗΜΙΩΝ ΕΜΠΟΡΙΚΟΥ ΝΑΥΤΙΚΟΥ



A΄ ΕΚΔΟΣΗ 2003 ISBN: 960-337-052-5

Copyright © 2003

Απαγορεύεται η ολική ή μερική ανατύπωση του βιβλίου και των εικόνων με κάθε μέσο καθώς και η διασκευή, η προσαρμογή, η μετατροπή και η κυκλοφορία του. (Άρθρο 3 του ν. 2121/1993).

#### ΠΡΟΛΟΓΟΣ ΙΔΡΥΜΑΤΟΣ ΕΥΓΕΝΙΔΟΥ

Ο Ευγένιος Ευγενίδης, ιδουτής και χορηγός του «Ιδούματος Ευγενίδου», ποοείδε ενωρίτατα και σχημάτισε τη βαθιά πεποίθηση ότι αναγκαίο παράγοντα για την πρόοδο του έθνους αποτελεί η άρτια κατάρτιση των τεχνικών μας σε συνδυασμό προς την ηθική τους αγωγή.

Την πεποίθησή του αυτή την μετέτρεψε σε γενναία πράξη ευεργεσίας, όταν κληροδότησε σεβαστό ποσό για τη σύσταση Ιδρύματος, που θα είχε ως σκοπό να συμβάλλει στην τεχνική εκπαίδευση των νέων της Ελλάδας.

Έτσι, τον Φεβρουάριο του 1956 συνεστήθη το «Ιδρυμα Ευγενίδου», του οποίου την διοίκηση ανέλαβε η αδελφή του Μαρ. Σίμου, σύμφωνα με την επιθυμία του διαθέτη. Από τη στιγμή εκείνη άρχισαν πραγματοποιούμενοι οι σκοποί που οραματίσθηκε ο Ευγένιος Ευγενίδης και συγχρόνως η εκπλήρωση μιας από τις βασικότερες ανάγκες του εθνικού μας βίου. Το έργο του Ιδρύματος συνέχισε από το 1981 μέχρι το 2000 ο Νικόλαος Βερνίκος-Ευγενίδης<sup>-</sup> έκτοτε συνεχίζει αυτό ο κ. Λεωνίδας Δημητριάδης-Ευγενίδης.

Κατά την κλιμάκωση των σκοπών του, το Ίδουμα πορέταξε την έκδοση τεχνικών βιβλίων τόσο για λόγους θεωρητικούς όσο και πρακτικούς. Διεπιστώθη πράγματι ότι αποτελεί πρωταρχική ανάγκη ο εφοδιασμός των μαθητών με σειρές από βιβλία, τα οποία θα έθεταν ορθά θεμέλια στην παιδεία τους και θα αποτελούσαν συγχρόνως πολύτιμη βιβλιοθήκη για κάθε τεχνικό.

Ειδικότερα, όσον αφορά στα εκπαιδευτικά βιβλία των σπουδαστών των Δημοσίων Σχολών Εμπορικού Ναυτικού, το Ίδρυμα ανέλαβε τότε την έκδοσή τους σε πλήρη και στενή συνεργασία με τη Διεύθυνση Ναυτικής Εκπαιδεύσεως του Υπουργείου Εμπορικής Ναυτιλίας, υπό την εποπτεία του οποίου υπάγονται οι Σχολές αυτές. Η ανάθεση στο Ίδρυμα έγινε με την υπ' αριθ. 61288/5031, της 9ης Αυγούστου 1966, απόφαση του Υπουργείου Εμπορικής Ναυτιλίας, οπότε και συνεκροτήθη και η αρμόδια Επιτροπή Εκδόσεων.

Αποτέλεσμα της συνεργασίας αυτής ήταν η έκδοση της Σειράς Βιβλιοθήκη του Ναυτικού, όπου εξεδόθησαν: α) Για τους μαθητές των Μέσων Ναυτικών Σχολών 30 τόμοι βιβλίων (1967 - 1979). β) Για τις ΑΔΣΕΝ (Ανώτερες Δημόσιες Σχολές Εμπορικού Ναυτικού) 54 τόμοι (1981 - 2001).

Κύθιος σκοπός των εκδόσεων αυτών, των οποίων το περιεχόμενο είναι σύμφωνο με τα εκάστοτε ισχύοντα αναλυτικά προγράμματα του YEN, ήταν η παροχή προς τους σπουδαστές των Ναυτικών Σχολών ΑΔΣΕΝ και Ναυτικών Λυκείων των αναγκαίων τότε εκπαιδευτικών κειμένων, τα οποία αντιστοιχούν προς τα μαθήματα που διδάσκονται στις Σχολές αυτές.

Επίσης ελήφθη ιδιαίτερη πρόνοια, ώστε τα βιβλία αυτά να είναι γενικότερα χρήσιμα για όλους τους αξιωματικούς του Εμπορικού Ναυτικού, που ασκούν το επάγγελμα ή εξελίσσονται στην ιεραρχία του κλάδου τους, χωρίς αυτό να σημαίνει ότι επέρχεται μεταβολή στη στάθμη του περιεχομένου τους. Με την υπ. αρ. 1168Β' /14.6.99 υπουργική απόφαση το Υπουργείο Εμπορικής Ναυτιλίας ανέθεσε στο Ίδρυμα Ευγενίδου την συγγραφή και έκδοση των διδακτικών εγχειριδίων των Ναυτικών Ακαδημιών· ήδη η επιτροπή εκδόσεων του Ιδρύματος, στην οποία μετέχει, όπως πάντα, και ο διευθυντής Ναυτικής Εκπαιδεύσεως του ΥΕΝ, προεκήρυξε συμφώνως προς απόφαση του ΥΕΝ την συγγραφή 15 βιβλίων προς κάλυψη επειγουσών αναγκών των σπουδαστών βάσει των ισχυόντων αναλυτικών προγραμμάτων. Τα βιβλία αυτά έχουν συγγραφεί ήδη και ευρίσκονται στο στάδιο της εκδόσεως.

Οι συγγραφείς και η Επιτροπή Εκδόσεων του Ιδρύματος εξακολουθούν να καταβάλλουν κάθε προσπάθεια, ώστε τα βιβλία να είναι επιστημονικώς άρτια αλλά και προσαρμοσμένα στις ανάγκες και τις δυνατότητες των σπουδαστών. Γι' αυτό έχουν προσεγμένη γλωσσική διατύπωση των κειμένων τους και η διαπραγμάτευση των θεμάτων είναι ανάλογη προς τη στάθμη της εκπαιδεύσεως, για την οποία προορίζονται.

Με την προσφορά στους καθηγητές, στους σπουδαστές της ναυτικής μας εκπαιδεύσεως και σε όλους τους αξιωματικούς του Ε.Ν. των εκδόσεών του, το Ίδρυμα συμβάλλει στην πραγματοποίηση του σκοπού του ιδρυτή του Ευγενίου Ευγενίδου.



#### ΕΠΙΤΡΟΠΗ ΕΚΔΟΣΕΩΝ ΙΔΡΥΜΑΤΟΣ ΕΥΓΕΝΙΔΟΥ

Μιχαήλ Αγγελόπουλος, ομ. καθηγητής ΕΜΠ, Ποόεδοος. Αλέξανδοος Σταυρόπουλος, ομ. καθηγητής Α.Β.Σ. Πειραιώς, Αντιπρόεδρος. Ιωάννης Τεγόπουλος, ομ. καθηγητής ΕΜΠ. Ν. Θεμέλαρος, αντιπλοίαρχος Λ.Σ., Διευθ. Ναυτ. Εκπ. Υ.Ε.Ν. Σύμβουλος επί των εκδόσεων του Ιδρύματος Κων. Μανάφης, καθηγ. Φιλοσοφικής Σχολής Πανεπιστημίου Αθηνών. Γραμματέας της Επιτροπής, Γεώργιος Ανδρεάκος.

## ΙΔΡΥΜΑ ΕΥΓΕΝΙΔΟΥ

### BIBΛΙΟΘΗΚΗ ΤΟΥ ΝΑΥΤΙΚΟΥ

## ENGLISH GRAMMAR

for the Merchant Marine Academies

PART ONE

ΗΛΙΑ Π. ΤΣΩΝΗ Καθηγητή Αγγλικών Α.Ε.Ν. Ασπροπύργου

> AΘHNA 2003



#### ΠΡΟΛΟΓΟΣ ΣΥΓΓΡΑΦΕΑ

Σύμφωνα και με την προκήρυξη συγγραφής η Αγγλική Γραμματική (English Grammar for the Merchant Marine Academies) έχει δύο κύριους στόχους: να παρουσιάσει τα γραμματικά φαινόμενα της Αγγλικής γλώσσας και να προσφέρει επαρκή, κατά το δυνατόν, εξάσκηση με εφαρμογές, αξιοποιώντας υλικό που προέρχεται κατά κύριο λόγο από ναυτικά κείμενα. Με αυτόν τον τρόπο ελπίζω να προσφερθεί μαζί με την απαραίτητη εξοικείωση στη γραμματική και σημαντικός όγκος ορολογίας στους μελλοντικούς Αξιωματικούς (Πλοιάρχους και Μηχανικούς) του Εμπορικού Ναυτικού. Η εξοικείωση αυτή δεν είναι απλώς επιθυμητή, αλλά μία από τις βασικές προδιαγραφές της ειδικής ναυτικής εκπαιδεύσεως, όπως αυτές καθορίζονται από το Διεθνή Ναυτιλιακό Οργανισμό (ΙΜΟ).

Η ανάγκη για εξοικείωση με την ορολογία δημιουργεί ίσως μεγάλες δυσκολίες, ως προς τις τεχνικές κυρίως λέξεις, ιδιαίτερα στο πρώτο τεύχος. Για να αντιμετωπισθεί η δυσκολία αυτή φρόντισα να υπάρχουν όσο το δυνατόν περισσότερες επαναλήψεις των ιδίων λέξεων. Επιπλέον χρησιμοποίησα την ελληνική στις θεωρητικές επεξηγήσεις, για να περιορισθούν οι άγνωστες λέξεις, που μοιραία θα αυξάνονταν από την ορολογία των επεξηγήσεων της γραμματικής. Τέλος προστέθηκε ένα γλωσσάριο ορολογίας στο τέλος του βιβλίου, για να διευκολυνθούν οι σπουδαστές στην εργασία τους.

Δεδομένου ότι είναι η πρώτη φορά που γράφεται τέτοιου είδους γραμματική είναι επιθυμητά εποικοδομητικά σχόλια και προτάσεις από τους συναδέλφους, που θα διδάξουν το περιεχόμενό της στις τάξεις τους, ώστε σε μελλοντική έκδοση να βελτιωθούν και τα κείμενα.

Θεωφώ υποχρέωσή μου να ευχαριστήσω όλους εκείνους που βοήθησαν ηθικά και πρακτικά στην πραγμάτωση του έργου και ιδιαίτερα τις καθηγήτριες Αγγλικής της Ακαδημίας Ασπροπύργου και της Ν. Μηχανιώνας Διαμαντή Αγλαΐα, Μάμαλη Ελένη και τις καθηγήτριες Λ. Σταχτιάρη, Χ. Λάλλη, Κ. Γρηγόρογλου για τη δοκιμή του περιεχομένου του βιβλίου στην αίθουσα).

Ευχαριστίες επίσης οφείλονται στην κ. Jacqueline Bissell-Poliraki του Βρετανικού Συμβουλίου (BA, UED, RSA, MA, MSc, M Ed), για τη βασική επιστημονική ανάγνωση του κειμένου, για τη διατύπωση πολυτίμων και πολυαρίθμων ιδεών, καθώς και για τις διορθώσεις τις σχετικές με την παρουσίαση του υλικού και τη διάταξη των ασκήσεων και στην Ελένη Τσώνη για τη φωτογραφία του εξωφύλλου.

Ιδιαιτέρως επίσης ευχαριστώ το προσωπικο του Εκδοτικού Τμήματος του Ιδρύματος Ευγενίδου για τη συμβολή του στις διορθώσεις και στην κατά το δυνατόν άρτια έκδοση του κειμένου.





#### PHMA EIMAI

#### Simple Present (Απλός Ενεστώτας).

positive	negative	interrogative
I am (I'm)*	I am not (I'm not)*	am I ?
he (he's)	he (he's not) he	he
she is (she's)	she is not (she's not) she isn't *	is she ?
it (it's)	it (it's not) it	it
we (we're)	we (we're not) we	we
you are (you're)	you are not (you're not) you aren't	are you ?
they (they're)	they (they're not) they	they

#### \* short forms

#### Examples.

- I'm a deck officer.
- You're late. Your watch is at 06.00.
- The Bosun's 35 years old.
- The Third Mate and the Third Engineer are good friends.
- It's 10.10. The Mate's late again!
- We're on the bridge.
- I am the watch officer tonight.
- I'm sad but I am not angry.
- She isn't a stewardess She's a passenger.
- You are not late for your watch. You're early.
- These seamen aren't Spanish. They're Greek.



- Is the watch officer late? No, he's on time.
- Am I right? No, you're not. You are wrong.
- Are these tankers new?
- Is this a passenger liner? No, she is a cruiser. (or It's a cruiser)

Προσοχή! Πλοία και μηχανές στην αγγλική μπορούν να είναι she (θηλυκά) ή it (ουδέτερα).

- Where is the ship now? She's in dock. (or It's in dock)
- What's this? It's a container ship.
- How many crew are on board?
- Why are you on the bridge?
- Who's that officer? The Second Mate.

#### Questions and short answers.

stions and short answers.		
• Are you the pilot?	Yes, I am.	No, I am not (No, I'm not).
• Am I wrong?	Yes, you are.	No, you are not (You're not /aren't).
		You're right
• Is the Mate sick?	Yes, he is.	No, he is not (No, he's not/isn't).
• Are these passengers Irish?	Yes, they are.	No, they are not (No, they're
		not/aren't)

- Here's the log-book! Thank you. • There's your boat coming! • This is your Captain speaking. • Hurry up! That's the ship's launch. **Notes:** \_\_\_\_\_ ..... **PRACTICE** (Unit 1). **Exercises**. (1.1) Write the short forms: 1. he is he's3. it is not \_\_\_\_\_ 5. I am not \_\_\_\_\_ 4. you are not \_\_\_\_\_ 2. we are \_\_\_\_\_ 6. that is \_\_\_\_\_ (1.2) Put in: am, is, are, isn't, aren't. 1. What ship \_\_\_\_\_ she?
- 2. Hydra and Spetses \_\_\_\_\_ (not) big harbours.



<ol> <li>Milos an island? Yes, it</li> <li>They officers. They</li> <li> you the Master? Yes, I</li> <li>The Captain and the Mate</li> <li> he the Electrician? No, he</li> <li>The helmsman and the Mate</li> <li>(1.3) Put in the interrogative and t</li> </ol>	(not) cadets.  _ on the bridge.  on the bridge. Where the	he others?
_	_	7
<ol> <li>I am a Captain.</li> <li>You are a passanger</li> </ol>	<u>Am J a Captain ?</u>	<u>J am not a Captain</u>
<ol> <li>You are a passenger.</li> <li>He is a cadet.</li> </ol>		
<ol> <li>The is a cadet.</li> <li>She is a stewardess.</li> </ol>		
<ul><li>5. It is a cargo ship.</li></ul>		
<ul><li>6. We are sailors.</li></ul>		
7. You are seamen.		
8. They are tankers.		
(1.4) Match the right answers to the	he questions:	7
<ol> <li>How many sails are there on the masts?</li> <li>Here are the sails?</li> <li>Which boats are beautiful?</li> <li>What colour is the tanker?</li> <li>Are these lifesavers on board?</li> <li>Whose work is that?</li> <li>(1.5) Write complete sentences: Example:</li> <li>(That / a cargo-ship) That is a cargo-ship.</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>A. The sailing boats.</li> <li>B. Red and black.</li> <li>C. On the masts.</li> <li>D. There are nine.</li> <li>E. The electrician's.</li> <li>F. Yes, they are.</li> </ul>	1.          2.          3.          4.          5.          6.
1. (She / not / a passenger-ship)		
2. (The container-ships / in port)		
3. (The deck-officers / not / on boar	rd / now	
4. (The Captain / on the bridge)		

5. (These / sailing-boats)



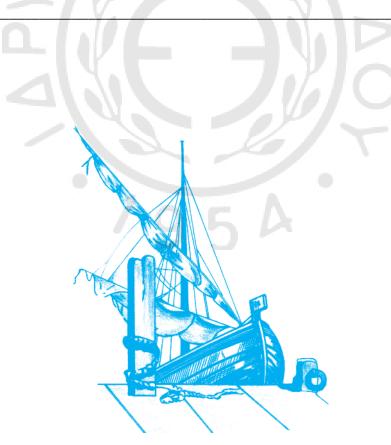
6. (This / her maiden voyage)

#### (1.6) Make questions. Use is, are.

#### Example:

(the Master / on the bridge)? *Is the Master on the bridge?* 

- 2. (the Bosun and the Third Mate / aft)
- 3. (these passengers / from Naxos)?
- 4. (those islands / Greek)?
- 5. (the ship in the distance / a tanker)?
- 6. (the Pilot / on board)?





#### Simple Past (Απλός Αόριστος).

pos	sitive	nega	ative	short	form	interro	ogative
I he		I he		I he	C		I? he?
she it	was	she it	was not	she it	wasn't	was	she? it?
we you they	were	we you they	were not	we you they	weren't	were	we? you? they?

- After his 4-hour watch the Third Engineer was tired and hungry.
- Ten minutes ago the Captain and the Mate were on the bridge.
- The Mate was angry because the two deck hands were not around.
- She was very unhappy but I was not able to help her.
- It was midnight but I wasn't very sleepy.
- It wasn't late but there weren't any passengers on the promenade deck.
- The sunset was beautiful but the Mate wasn't interested
- Were you in the galley half an hour ago? No, I was in my cabin.
- Was the Captain angry about the mistake? Yes, he was very angry.
- Were the officers ready for sailing? No, they were still below.
- Where were the ABs? They were at their posts.
- Who was the beautiful lady on the promenade deck? A French passenger.
- How many officers were on board? There were ten.
- Which officer was Polish? The Third Mate.



#### Questions and short answers.

• Was the Second Mate in his cabin?	Yes, he was.	No, he was not (wasn't).
• Were the men ready to dock?	Yes, they were.	No, they were not (weren't).
• Were you an apprentice on the 'Eva'?	Yes, I was.	No, I was not (wasn't).
• Was the Captain's wife on board?	Yes, she was.	No, she was not (wasn't).
• Were you in the rescue team?	Yes, we were.	No, we were not (weren't).

#### Notes:

#### **PRACTICE** (Unit 2)

#### 🗷 Exercises.

(2.1) Put in *was/were* in the blanks, and then put the sentences in the interrogative and the negative: *Example*:

1. Ia Captain.	<u>Was J a Captain ?</u>	J was not a Captain.
2. Youa passenger.		
3. Hea cadet		T
4. Shea stewardess.		
5. It a cargo ship		
6. We sailors		
7. Youseamen.	<u>. 30 r</u>	
8. They tankers.		

#### (2.2) Put in was, were, wasn't, weren't.

From Xenia's diary: Mykonos \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful small island. It \_\_\_\_\_ the summer and there \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of visitors on the island. There \_\_\_\_\_ Germans\*, Americans, Frenchmen and Japanese, but there \_\_\_\_\_ any Chinese or Russians. The town \_\_\_\_\_ very pretty and the houses \_\_\_\_\_ all around the harbour. There \_\_\_\_\_ many shops but there \_\_\_\_\_ a shoemaker's. This \_\_\_\_\_ bad because my sandals \_\_\_\_\_ in need of repair.

\* For a list of countries and nationalities see Appendix 2.

#### (2.3) Match the questions to the answers:

1. What time was it?	A. The engine room.	1
2. What kind of cargo was that?	B. Just terrible.	2
3. What was the weather like?	C. Half past eight.	3
4. Were there any members of the crew		
on the deck?	D. Very good	4
5. How bad was your insomnia?	E. My friend Niko.	5
6. Were there in any other boats		
in sight?	F. There was very little.	6
7. What were the people on the quay		
waiting for?	G. No, there weren't.	7. <u> </u>
8. Where were you last year?	H. Yes, there was a yacht	
	in the distance.	8
9. Who was with you?	I. For his luggage.	9
10. Which of you was on duty last night?	J. On a training trip.	10
11. What was on fire	K. Corn	11
12. How much damage was there?	L. I was.	12
13. What is the passenger waiting for?	M. For the liner to arrive.	13
(2.4) Write questions.		
Example:		

## (2.5) Give short answers. Use a subject pronoun and was, wasn't, were, weren't.

#### **Example:**

Was the fire under control?

- 1. Was that a super tanker?
- 2. Were the fire drills useful?
- 3. Were the pumps in order?
- 4. Was there a gale warning?
- 5. Was there a storm expected in the area?

No, it wasn't.

- 1. Yes, \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. No, \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. Yes, \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. No,
- 5. Yes, \_\_\_\_\_





There is, there are, there was, there were

#### TO PHMA YIIAPX $\Omega$

Το ρήμα exist (υπάρχω) είναι προχωρημένη λέξη και βρίσκεται σε επόμενα επίπεδα της γλωσσικής διδασκαλίας. Σ' αυτή τη φάση παρουσιάζουμε τις φράσεις *there is, there are* που χρησιμοποιούνται πολύ συχνά και μόνο στο γ' πρόσωπο ενικού και πληθυντικού.

#### Α. Κλίση Ενεστώτα

Ενικός	Πληθυντικός
there is (there's)	there are
there is not (there isn't OR there's not)	there are not (there aren't)
is there?	are there?

#### • There's a big tanker outside the port.

- Is there a ship for Mykonos this afternoon? I'm sorry. There isn't.
- There are six lifeboats on board the M/V "Jacky".
- Excuse me. Are there any passengers left on board? No, there aren't.

#### B. there is rat it is

- There's a tool on the workbench. What is it? It's a spanner.
- What's **that noise**? **It's** the pilot boat. (it=that noise)
- There are a lot of passengers on that ship. They are Germans.

#### Γ. Κλίση Αορίστου

Ενιχός	Πληθυντικός
there was	there were
there was not (there wasn't)	there were not (there weren't)
was there?	were there?

- There was only one passenger in the ship's bar last night.
- There were three sailing ships on the horizon. Perhaps there was a regatta on.
- Were there any problems during your watch last night? No, there weren't.
- Was there a sea adventure on TV yesterday afternoon? Yes, there was. It was a wonderful film.



#### Practice Unit (3)

#### 🛎 Exercises.

(3.1) Make sentences with there *is/ there are* as in the example:

#### Example:

(in the Aegean/a lot of islands) There are a lot of islando in the Aegean Sea.

- 1. in the chartroom / a lot of maps.
- .....
- 2. in a Scotch boiler / combustion chamber.
- .....
- 3. in a boiler / some safety valves.
- 4. in this boiler / a main stop valve.
- 5. in a water-tube boiler / fire proof casing.
  - .....

#### (3.2) Put in there's, there are, it's, there isn't, there aren't, is there, are there:

#### Example:

Well, there are twelve months in a year, but J work only six.

- 1. Look ! ...... a free bollard on the quay? No, ......
- 2. How many masts ...... on your sailing ship? ...... three.
- 3. ..... a container ship in the harbour. No, .....
- 4. .....a fast ship sailing at 10.00. ....a flying dolphin?
- 5. What's wrong? ...... a war ship in the harbour. ...... Turkish!
- 6. I don't want to buy the boat. ..... too expensive.
- (3.3) Put in there was/wasn't, there were/weren't, was there(?), were there(?):
- 1. As electricity was very important, ...... spare generators on board.
- 2. They wanted to rent a boat, but ..... any in the harbour at the moment.
- 3. ..... a hotel near the quay? No, ..... . I had to carry my suitcases a mile away. Fortunately ...... a boy who offered to help.
- 4. ..... any telexes for the Captain yesterday?





#### ΡΗΜΑ ΕΧΩ

#### Simple Present (have/has or have/has got)

	pos	itive			negative		iı	nterrogativ	/e
Ι		I've		Ι	have not		have	Ι	
you	have	you've	got	you	(haven't)	got	1	you	got?
he		he's		he				he	
she	hos	she's	ant	she	has not	got	hog	she	cot?
it	has	it's	got	it	(hasn't)	got	has	it	got?
we		we've		we				we	
you	hovo	you've	got	you	have not	aot	hava	you	cot?
they	have	they've	got	they	(haven't)	got	have	they	got?

#### I have or I have got sth = It is mine or it belongs to me or I own it

- Sailing boats have got high masts for their sails.
- I have (have got) a row-boat but you've got a motor-boat.
- She is a cargo-ship. She's got (has) large holds.

#### Questions and short answers.

Have you (got) a compass?	Yes, I <b>have</b> .	No, I have not / haven't.
Has he (got) a telescope?	Yes, he <b>has</b> .	No, he has not / hasn't.
Has the 'ELLI' got 40 guns?	Yes, she <b>has</b> .	No, she hasn't.
Have the ferry boats got good	Yes, they <b>have</b> .	No, they haven't.
Captains?	Yes, they have.	No, they haven't.

#### Simple Past (had) - (Απλός Αόριστος).

• I had major damage above the water line.



- They had a leak below the water line.
- Had the cargo liner got a dangerous list? Yes, she had.
- Had the seamen got permission to go ashore? No, they hadn't.

#### Notes:

•••••	•••••	••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	••••	•••••	•••••	•••••		•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	••
•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••		••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	• • • • • • • • •	•••••	•••••	•••

#### **PRACTICE (Unit 4)**

#### 🗷 Exercises.

#### (4.1) Write sentences in the present and in the past as in the example:

#### Example:

car/ four wheels/ engine/ exhaust This is a car. It has got four wheels, an engine and an exhaust. This was a car. It had got four wheels, an engine and an exhaust.

1.	ship/ two anchors/ engine/ propeller
	This
	That
2.	sailing-boats/ three masts/ rudder/ tiller
	These
	Those
3.	motor-boats/ outboard engines/ high speed
	These
	Those
4.	tug-boat/ powerful engines/ low superstructure/ high stability
	This
	That
5.	Captain/ a lot/ work/ responsibilities
	This
	That

#### (4.2) Give short answers.

#### Example:

Have you (got) problems with cargo?

- 1. Has the vessel (got) problems with machinery?
- 2. Has the Captain got problems with navigation?
- 3. Had cargo ships an escort during the war?
- 4. Had the cruiser (got) a heavy list to port side?
- 5. Had you (got) any life rafts on board?

#### (4.3) Match the questions with the answers:

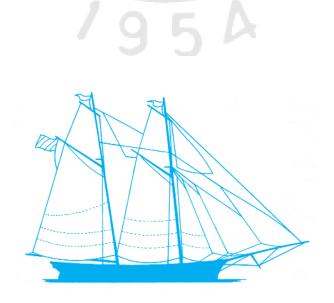
- 1. What depth have you got in your position?
- 2. What kind of spillage have they got?

- <u>Ves, J have.</u> No, \_\_\_\_\_ No, \_\_\_\_\_ Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ No, \_\_\_\_\_
- A. Ten Philippine sailors.B. They had just one.

1.\_\_\_\_ 2.



3. How many life-boats had they got?	C. The port side.	3
4. How many deck-hands has the vessel got?	D. The Bosun.	4
5. Who has got a health problem on board?	E. Oil.	5
6. Which side had they got the heaving line		
ready?	F. Ten fathoms.	6
(4.4) Write questions		
a. In the Present (have got, has got)		
Example:		
The "Ioanna"/Purser/ on board		
Has the "Joanna" got a purser on bod	<u>ard?</u>	
1. the Leto/pilot/ on board		
2. the pilot-ladder / loose steps		
b. In the Past (had)		
3. they/a heaving line/ready on starboard side		
4. on the Vivianna/ an engine problem		
c. Meaning "arrive"		
5. fire patrol / to the superstructure		
6. fire patrol / to the engine room		





## **General Practice**

#### 🗷 Exercises.

(5.1) Put in: is, are, was, were, have (got), has (got), had (got).

- 1. Where \_\_\_\_\_ Pearl Harbour ? It \_\_\_\_\_ in Hawaii.
- 2. Yesterday it \_\_\_\_\_ a holiday and the harbour \_\_\_\_\_ very busy. A lot of passenger liners \_\_\_\_\_ extra trips to the islands.
- 3. The tug \_\_\_\_\_ in the fairway.
- 4. Lathe tools \_\_\_\_\_ two clearance angles.
- 5. The milling machine we saw \_\_\_\_\_ good.
- 6. The rocker box \_\_\_\_\_ above the cylinder head.
- 7. They \_\_\_\_\_ not leaf springs, they \_\_\_\_\_ strips, they \_\_\_\_\_ spiral coils.

#### (5.2) Write sentences in the simple past as in the example.

#### **Example:**

aeroplane/ helicopter/ rotor on top/ rotor on the tail <u>That wasn't an aeroplane. It was a helicopter.</u> <u>It had got a rotor on top and a rotor on the tail.</u>

- 1. cargo-ship/ passenger liner/ rows of cabins/ three decks
- 2. diesel engine/ petrol engine/ spark plugs/ carburettor.

.....

3. private jet/ military aircraft/ four missiles/ two machine guns.

.....

.....

4. supertanker/ container ship/ a length of 80metres/ 6 tiers.

.....

.....

#### (5.3) Write sentences in the present.

#### Example:

bevel gear /helical gear/teeth that form helices.



<u> It isn't a bevel gear. It is a helical gear.</u> <u>It has got teeth that form helices.</u>
1. Worm gears/spur gears/teeth straight parallel to axis.
2. pinion/bevel gear/stunted teeth in relation to the plane of the wheel.
3. Crane/derrick/a large hook turning round to load some heavy cases on to the deck.
4. General cargo carrier/container ship/ten containers on board.
5. Rescue party/fire party/fire fighting equipment with them.
6. Two-stroke engine/four stroke engine/four cylinders and four pistons.
7. Battleship/aircraft carrier/20 fighter aircraft on board.
(5.4) Complete the following: use there is(there isn't), there are(there aren't), there was(there wasn't), there were(there weren't).

**Examples:** 

<u>Js there a doctor on board? Yes, **there is**. **There is** onlysome wire, a plug and a socket. What can you do with them?</u>

- 1. I checked in the store-room, but \_\_\_\_\_\_any screws. \_\_\_\_\_\_ only nails.
- 2. "Look into the top drawer. I think \_\_\_\_\_\_ a nut in there." "I'm sorry, \_\_\_\_\_\_ any nuts here.
- 3. The shop is full of appliances. \_\_\_\_\_\_ all sorts of refrigerators, cookers, washing machines, etc.
- 4. I'm at the top of the hill looking at the harbour. \_\_\_\_\_ five cargo-ships but \_\_\_\_\_ a passenger liner.
- 5. I looked in the box but \_\_\_\_\_\_ only a bolt. \_\_\_\_\_\_ a nut.





## **Tenses: Present Continuous/Present** (present actions, descriptions)

#### ΕΝΕΣΤΩΤΑΣ ΔΙΑΡΚΕΙΑΣ (ΠΡΟΟΔΕΥΤΙΚΟΣ ΕΝΕΣΤΩΤΑΣ)

#### 1. Κατασκευή: be (am, is, are) + ing (μετοχή ενεστώτα).

#### 2. Κλίση.

Posit	tive		Negative			
Ι	'm (am)		I	'm not (am not)		
he she it	's (is)	sailing	he she it	's not ( is not)	sailing.	
we you they	're (are)		we you they	're not (are not)		

Que	stion			Short answer	
am	Ι		Yes,	Ι	am.
um			No,		'm not.
	he		Yes,	he	is.
is	she			she	
18	it	sailing?	No,	it	isn't.
	we		Yes,	we	are.
are	you			you	
	they		No,	they	aren't.

#### 3. Οθθογραφία της μετοχής (Spelling of Present participle):

- Για να σχηματίσετε τη μετοχή ενεστώτα:
- Προσθέστε -ing σε όλα τα ρήματα > stand-ing, motor-ing, load-ing,



- Απορρίψτε το e για όσα ρήματα λήγουν σε -e > rotate rotat-ing, navigate navigat-ing
- Διπλασιάστε το τελικό σύμφωνο για ρήματα μιας συλλαβής > stop-ping, put-ting
- Αλλά: sail-ing, feel-ing,

#### **4.** Χ**ρήση.**

<ul> <li>Για πράξεις που γίνονται τη στιγμή που ανακοινώνονται (τώρα). Συχνά ακολουθούνται από το επίρρημα τώρα ή άλλο παρόμοιας σημασίας.</li> </ul>	They are sailing the Corinth Canal now. The Third Mate is demonstrating the use of fire extinguishers at the moment.
<ul> <li>Για προσωρινές ή τρέχουσες πράξεις, καταστάσεις ή τάσεις.</li> </ul>	I am not teaching this year. I've got a sabbatical.
E	Island cruises are selling well this month.
	Which hotel are you staying at ?
<ul> <li>Για περιγραφές πράξεων και καταστάσεων.</li> </ul>	"What are you doing there?"
	"I'm looking at that beautiful yacht. The
	people on board are having a party. One of the
	girls"

### 5. Στατικά εήματα.

Μερικά ρήματα είναι στατικά. Τα ρήματα αυτά περιγράφουν καταστάσεις (δηλ. συνθήκες όπως είναι και βρίσκονται) και όχι δραστηριότητες που βρίσκονται σε εξέλιξη. Π.χ. The Helmsman knows the ship's course (δηλ. "The Helmsman knows ..." περιγράφει την πνευματική κατάσταση που υπάρχει).

#### Ν.Β.! Οι πιο κάτω ομάδες وημάτων δεν χρησιμοποιούνται κατά κανόνα στους προοδευτικούς χρόνους!

1. Mental Πνευματικά	know understand believe	forget feel think(*)	imagine remember want	mean need
2. Emotional Συναισθηματικά	like love	hate	fear	care mind
<ol> <li>Sense(*)</li> <li>Αισθήσεων</li> </ol>	hear feel	smell taste	see	look
4. Possession Κτήσεως	belong contain	have(*)	own owe	possess
5. Other Άλλα	appear(*) seem	cost weigh(*)	be(*) exist	consist of include



They have sold the ship. Now it **belongs** to *Omega Shipping*. The control unit **includes** a memory now. Explain again! The bosun doesn't **seem** to **understand**. Oh no! I **think** he understands perfectly.

#### (\*) Τα εήματα με αστεείσκο μποεούν επίσης να χεησιμοποιούνται στους πεοοδευτικούς χεόνους, αλλά με διαφοεά στη σημασία.

It's very dark now. I see nothing. (= can't see anything). Mary telephoned half an hour ago. I'm seeing her tonight. (= I shall meet her)

#### Notes:


#### **PRACTICE (Unit 6) Present Continuous**

#### 🗷 Exercises.

(6.1) Put the following in the present continuous. Add an appropriate subject.

#### Example:

Heave in [the] back spring.\* J' m heaving in [the] back spring.

1. Stand by [the] engine.

------

- 2. Jump into water and enter [the] lifeboat.
- 3. Stand clear of [the] vessel and report.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Connect [the] lifeboats with lines and report.

5. Inform [the] coast radio station.

.....

6. Report [the] total number of persons rescued.

.....

- ΠΡΟΣΟΧΗ! Το άρθρο συνήθως αφαιρείται στις απ' ευθείας διαταγές που περιλαμβάνονται στις Πρότυπες Ναυτικές Φράσεις του ΙΜΟ. Στο βιβλίο αυτό και τα επόμενα δύο της σειράς το άρθρο ή άλλη λέξη που λείπει θα εμφανίζεται σε αγκύλη.
- (6.2) Describe what is happening now. Put the verbs in the correct form: Remember some verbs are not used in the Present Continuous!

It (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ afternoon. The weather (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ fine. We (see) \_\_\_\_\_



the fishermen returning in their boats. They (look) \_\_\_\_\_\_ tired. Their children and their wives (wait) \_\_\_\_\_\_ for them on the jetty. The fishing boats (sail) \_\_\_\_\_\_ into port one after the other. It (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ pleasant to see them crossing the blue waves. Some of them (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ in full sail. One fisherman (wave) \_\_\_\_\_\_ to his family.\*

\* This text was adapted from "MAOHMATA AFFAIKH $\Sigma$ " by  $\Delta$ . Ποταμιάνος

#### (6.3) Respond to the following by using the Present Continuous beginning with I or We:

#### Example:

- I
Hold on the stern line.
<u>J' m holding on the stern line.</u>
Fore station, heave in tight.
Fore station:
Aft station, move ahead a little.
Aft station:
Lower two head lines to the life boat.
Aft station, make tugs fast.
Aft station:
See to it that young Thomson prepares the gangway.
Avoid this area [There is] -no possibility for [the] vessels to turn.
Recover your fishing gear, at once.
Approach prohibited fishing area.

(6.4) Find the meaning of the verbs in the Glossary and then put them in the appropriate blanks in the Present Continuous.

correct, alter, call, stand by

#### **Examples:**

Engines ..... at U.T.C.....

Engines <u>are standing by</u> at UTC.....

- 1. OK. I ..... course now.....
- 3. Look! They ..... [the] list.....

transfer, stop, stand by, operate

- 4. The Helmsman and the lookout .....
- 5. We ...... Fuel from No 1 to No 3 tank now.
- 6. Not now! The generator ..... additional pumps.
- 7. I ..... No. 4 Tank.



# Tenses: Simple Present (states, habits, systems and processes)

#### ΕΙΣΑΓΩΓΗ ΒΟΗΘΗΤΙΚΟ ΡΗΜΑ -do

Χοησιμοποιούμε το βοηθητικό οήμα do για να σχηματίσουμε τον ερωτηματικό και αρνητικό τύπο των άλλων οημάτων στον Present Simple (Απλό Ενεστώτα) και τον Past Simple (Απλό Αόριστο).

Present: I, you, we, they do/ he, she it, does

I, you, we, they do not (don't)/ he, she, it, does not (doesn't)

Do I, you, we, they? Does he, she, it?

#### ΑΠΛΟΣ ΕΝΕΣΤΩΤΑΣ

#### 1. Κλίση.

Pos	itive	N	legative	
Ι	sail	Ι	do not (don't)	sail
he		he		
she	sails	she	does not (doesn't)	sail
it	Salls	it		San
we	•	we		
you	sail	you	do not (don't)	sail
they	San	they	h K	

Interrogative

Short answer

do	Ι	sail ?	yes, no,	Ι	do. don't
does	he she it	sail ?	yes, no,	he she it	does. doesn't.
do	we you they	sail ?	yes, no,	we you they	do don't



#### 2. Οθθογραφία του γ΄ προσωπικού ενικού.

- Προσθέστε -s στο 3ο ενικό όλων των  $\rho$ ημάτων > sail-s, navigate-s, swim-s, rotate-s
- Προσθέστε -es για ρήματα που λήγουν: -s, -sh, ch, o > pass-es, cash-es, watch-es, do-es, go-es
- Για ρήματα που λήγουν σε: consonant + y > carry > carr-i-es, tid-i-es, αλλά:

- Για ρήματα που λήγουν σε: vowel + y >play-s.

#### 3. Χϱήση.

<ul> <li>Για μακοοχοόνιες</li></ul>	I am a seaman. I work on the "PETROS I".
καταστάσεις:	Where does he work?
<ul> <li>Για συνήθειες και συνήθεις</li></ul>	The Chief Engineer always spends his summers on Ios.
διαδικασίες:	She sails to Astypalea every Saturday.
	How often do they inspect the ship? The derrick loads heavy cases from lorries on to the deck.
<ul> <li>Για συναισθήματα και</li></ul>	The Captain loves this ship very much.
γνώμες:	The Engineer doesn't see eye to eye with the Captain in this.
<ul> <li>Για γεγονότα και αλήθειες:</li> </ul>	The voyage takes two weeks and costs \$200. Water boils at 100 degrees C. The sun rises in the east.
• Σε question και short answers:	Does the Captain have control of the ship? No, he doesn't. Do they have foreign officers on board? Yes, they do.

#### Notes

.....

#### **PRACTICE (Unit 7)**

#### 🗷 Exercises.

#### (7.1) Use Present Tense to describe how things work (systems and processes)

- An electric drill (have) \_\_\_\_\_\_ a power cord, a switch, a motor, a gearbox and a chuck. The power cord (supply) \_\_\_\_\_\_ electricity to the switch. The switch (connect) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the electricity to the motor. The motor (drive) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the gearbox. The gearbox (drive) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the chuck. The chuck (hold) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the bit.
- 2. When a vessel (not get) \_\_\_\_\_\_ under way under her own engine power, a tug boat (take) \_\_\_\_\_\_ her in tow.

#### (7.2) Put the verbs in the correct form of the Simple Present:

1. It \_\_\_\_\_ (take) the Flying Dolphin one and a half hours to get to Tinos.



2.	Fast liners	(sail) at 20 knots an hour, but hydrofoils	(be) much faster.
3.	What time _	(Ferry, call) at port? I	(think) she (put in)
	at six		
4.	Ask the Mat	te! He (speak) three languages.	
5.	Tugboats	(tow) ships that (have	) an engine problem.
(7	.3) Ask what	t these professionals do (For no. 7 give question and a	nswer):
1.	(arbitrator)	What does an arbitrator do?	
		He makes a decision between two parties that do not a	
2.	(deck-hands	)	
		They do all the odd jobs on board a ship (e.g. scrub th	e decks, operate the windlass, etc.)
3.	(Purser)		?
		He keeps the accounts, pays wages, is responsible for s	tores etc.
4.	(Boatswain)		?
		He is in charge of the crew, boats, rigging etc.	
5.	(Chief Stewa	ard)	?
		He is in charge of the galley and the stewards.	
6.	(Coxswain)		?
		He is the person who steers a small boat.	
7.	(cadets)		?
		They	?
(7	,	re you know what these verbs mean and then complete Use <i>don't/doesn't</i> . Use one of the verbs in the lists below	
Ex	xample:		
	-	ship. <u>It doesn't have an engine.</u>	
	-	have carry want use	
		have carry want use	

- 1. Have a sandwich. No, thanks. I <u>don't want</u> to eat right now.
- 2. This is a container ship. She \_\_\_\_\_\_ oil or wheat.
- 3. You've got the wrong batteries. These calculators \_\_\_\_\_\_ large batteries.

#### have drive cut

- 4. This saw\_\_\_\_\_ metal. You need a hacksaw to do that.
- 5. These screwdrivers are too small. We \_\_\_\_\_\_ big screws with them.
- 6. Do you have a doctor on board? No, I \_\_\_\_\_\_ a doctor on board.





## **Tenses: Simple Past (Past events)**

#### ΑΠΛΟΣ ΑΟΡΙΣΤΟΣ ΓΙΑ ΠΕΡΑΣΜΕΝΑ ΓΕΓΟΝΟΤΑ

#### ΕΙΣΑΓΩΓΗ ΒΟΗΘΗΤΙΚΟ ΡΗΜΑ do

Χρησιμοποιούμε το βοηθητικό ρήμα do στον αόριστο <u>did</u> για να σχηματίσουμε τον ερωτηματικό και αρνητικό τύπο των άλλων ρημάτων στον Past Simple.

- Past: I, you, he, she, it, we, they did I, you, he, she, it, we, they did not (didn't)
  - **Did I**, you, he, she, it, we, they?

#### 1. Κλίση.

Posi	tive		Negativ	re-		
I			I	JAK.	5	
he	4		he		$\sim$	
she it	sailed	yesterday.	she it	did not	sail	yesterday.
we	rang*	yesterday.	we	(didn't)	ring*	yesteruay.
you	U		you			
they			they	A		
			ר ר			

Interrogative

Short answer

	Ι				Ι	
	he				he	
	she				she	
Did	it	sail	yesterday ?	Yes,	it	did
	we	ring		No,	we	didn't
	you				you	
	they				they	

\*Για κατάλογο ανωμάλων οημάτων με τα τοία κύοια μέρη τους βλέπε Appendix 1.



• Type 1	start start-ed	play play <b>-ed</b>	sail sail-ed
	fix fix-ed	screw screw-ed	buzz buzz-ed
• Type 2	secure secure-d	change change-d	lie lie-d
• Type 3	tap tap-ped	omit omit-ted	travel travel-led*
• Type 4	tidy tid-ie-d	ply pl- <b>ie-d</b>	pry pr <b>-ie-d</b>

#### 3. Προφορά του τελικού -d.

είτε /-t/ e.g. stopped, switched, checked, etc.

είτε /-d/ e.g. altered, showed, explained, etc.

αλλά αν το ρήμα λήγει σε -t or -d προφέρουμε /-id/ e.g. count-ed, fit-ted, end-ed.

#### 4. Ανώμαλα Ρήματα\*.

be – was	have – had	ring – rang	spread – spread take
come – came	hold – held	send – sent	– took
get – got	leave – left	set – set	teach - taught
go – went	put – put	spend – spent	wake – woke

\*Για κατάλογο ανωμάλων οημάτων με τα τοία κύοια μέοη τους βλέπε Appendix (1).

#### 5. Χϱήση.

• Με απλό αόριστο αναφερόμαστε	I worked on the M/V KIRKI for two years
σε ολοκληρωμένες πράξεις,	The Chinese ship didn't receive the message.
δραστηριότητες και καταστάσεις που συχνά ακολουθούνται από	The NAIAS sailed to Hydra every day.
χρονικούς προσδιορισμούς όπως	Did they send the signal on time?
yesterday, last week, two days ago,	They launched the new tanker last week.
etc.	The vessel left the dry dock two days ago.
• Επίσης διηγούμεθα ιστορίες.	Jim went on board the beautiful clipper. He knew
• $\Sigma \varepsilon$ questions $\varkappa \alpha \iota$ short answers:	Did the vessel have a heavy list? Yes, she did.
	Did the passengers have a good time? No, they didn't.

#### **Notes:**



#### **PRACTICE (Unit 8)**

#### 🗷 Exercises.

#### (8.1) Put the sentences in the past tense. Use the subject suggested:

## **Example:** The visibility is very good this morning. The visibility was very good this morning. 1. All hands, assemble for the call at 16.00. All hands ..... 2. I confirm [that]10 crew members are here. Ι..... 3. Boatswain, check the life jacket fittings before the drill. The Boatswain ..... 4. The Captain sometimes finds problems on his inspection round. Sometimes the Captain ..... 5. This company has three tankers and a general cargo carrier. This company ..... ......when they started business. 6. George, put in the stopper pin. George ..... (8.2) Put the following in the Past. Begin as prompted: Wait for the signal. The sailor waited for the signal. 1. Dismiss the anchor party. The Chief Mate 2. Switch on the navigation lights. The Second Mate \_\_\_\_ 3. Hold on the chain with 4 shackles in the water. The AB 4. Switch on the auxiliary generator at once! The Electrician 5. Switch off the engines immediately!

The Engineer\_\_\_\_\_

#### (8.3) Use the simple past tense to complete the following story:

The Canadian port (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ known for its difficulties so they (call) \_\_\_\_\_\_ for a pilot. As soon as the pilot (come) \_\_\_\_\_\_ on board the men (take) \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the gangway. The pilot, the Master and the Helmsman (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ on the bridge. The pilot (give) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the command to the engine-room telegraph, 'Engines stand by'. The men (stand) \_\_\_\_\_\_ by fore and aft. They (let) \_\_\_\_\_\_ go the breast ropes first, the stern rope and aft spring next, and then gradually the head ropes and forward spring. When the above operations (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ over, and



the vessel well into the navigable channel, the pilot (order), (manoeuvre) the ship past the breakwater, then he (board),	-
boat that (take) him back to port. *	
* This text was adapted from "MAOHMATA AFFAIKH $\Sigma$ " by $\Delta$ . Потаµıávo5.	
(8.4) Vagelis has just come back from the sea. Ask him about his voyage.	
Example: (when/return/you) <u>When did you return?</u>	
1. (which/vessel/you/be on)	
2. (how big/be/the ship)	
3. (what/be/your rank)	
4. (work/you/on deck or engine department)	
5. (what kind of vessel/you/serve/on)	
6. (how long/stay/you/on board)	
7. (enjoy/you/the work)	
8. (make/a lot of money) ?	
9. (visit/many countries)	
(8.5) There were some more questions for Vagelis:	
1. (find/you/the work/hard)	
2. (What/be/the food like)	
3. (Which/port/like/you/best)	
4. (make/good friends/on board)	
5. (Do/you/a lot of shopping) ?	
6. (How many/voyages/you/make) ?	
7. (What/buy/you/for your girlfriend)	



## (8.6) Find the meaning of these verbs and then complete the sentences. They are *negative/interrogative*. Use didn't, did (+*subject*) and one of the verbs in brackets:

#### come, send, send, spread

- 1. Fortunately the fire \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the combustible cargoes.
- 2. We signalled but they \_\_\_\_\_\_ the rescue party at once.
- 3. They \_\_\_\_\_\_ too late but they \_\_\_\_\_\_ enough fire- extinguishers with them.

#### advance, apply, explain, have, take

- 4. The vessel had all fire fighting equipment on board but the crew \_\_\_\_\_\_ to us how to use it.
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_\_ the firemen \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to the immediate fire? Yes, they did, but they \_\_\_\_\_\_ the right agent.
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_\_ the breathing apparatus ? No, I'm afraid I didn't.

#### (8.7) Ask and answer questions as in the example.

e.g. you fill/double bottom tank No 3/Yes. Did you fill double bottom tank No. 3? Yes, J did. J filled double bottom tank No. 3

- 1. They discharge/tank No. 4/No.
- 2. You/call/watch engineer/Yes.
- 3. He/correct/list/Yes.
- 4. The Engineer of the watch/reduce/speed/Yes.
- 5. Chief Engineer/sign/log books/Yes.

.....

- 6. Revolutions of main engine/be/below ...... per minute/No.
- .....
- 7. There/be/breakdown of main engine/No.

.....



# **Tenses: Past Continuous**

# ΑΟΡΙΣΤΟΣ ΔΙΑΡΚΕΙΑΣ (ΠΡΟΟΔΕΥΤΙΚΟΣ ΑΟΡΙΣΤΟΣ).

#### 1. Κατασκευή.

Ρήμα είμαι (was, were) + Μετοχή Ενεστώτα (-ing)

#### 2. Κλίση.

Positive		Negative			
Ι					
he		6.6	he		
she	was	sailing	she	was not (wasn't)	sailing
it	51	Y A	it		
we			we		
you	were	sailing	you	were not (weren't)	sailing
they		-	they		
		46			
Question		А	nswer		

Question	1 Milliower
Was he sailing ?	Yes, he was. No, he wasn't
Were they sailing ?	Yes, they were. No, they weren't

# **3.** Χ**ρ**ήση.

•Ο Αόριστος Διαρχείας περιγράφει μια	Scientists discovered that oil spills were
πράξη που ήταν σε εξέλιξη όταν κάποια άλλη έγινε και τελείωσε.	*
<ul> <li>Μια πράξη που ήταν σε εξέλιξη σε μια</li> </ul>	On September 1995 I was working on the S/S
συγκεκοιμένη χρονική στιγμή στο παρελθόν.	<i>"BIRGIT"</i> .
• Όταν αναφερόμαστε σε προηγούμενα σχέ-	We were sailing to New York, but we were
δια και καταστάσεις ή θέτομε ένα σκηνικό.	ordered to set course for Curacao.
<ul> <li>Όταν περιγράφομε δύο δραστηριότητες που</li> </ul>	While we were sailing to New York they were
εξελίσσονταν ταυτόχρονα (while) ή που η	sailing to Calcutta.
μία διακόπτει την άλλη (when). Οπότε το while ακολουθείται από Αόριστο Διαρκείας,	They were sailing to Calcutta when the attack
ενώ το when από τον Απλό Αόριστο.	began.



#### Practice Unit (9): Past Continuous.

#### *Exercises.*

(9.1) You are the Third Engineer on the *M*/*V EFFI*. Answer the questions in the past continuous. Use the prompts: the first one has been done for you.

What were you doing ....

- 1. at 9 o'clock yesterday evening? (watch T.V./in my cabin). <u>J was watching TV in my cabin</u>.
- 2. at 10 o'clock in the morning? (do my watch/in the engine room)

.....

3. half an hour ago? (service/distributor/workshop)

------

4. at 7.30 last Sunday? (write/letters home/cabin)

\_\_\_\_\_

5. at 4 o'clock in the afternoon? (make/list/spare parts we need)

\_\_\_\_\_

(9.2) Say what was happening on board at the time the fire alarm rang. Use the words in brackets and add anything necessary to make the sentences:

*Example:* (Steward/lay/the dinner table/officers' room)

The steward was laying the table in the officers' dinning room.

1. (Lookouts/stand by/for [the] signals from the Coordinator)

.....

- 2. (Mate/carry out/radar search)
- 3. (The Chief Engineer/check/suction pump)
- 4. (Watch Engineer/take/readings from the instruments)

5. (Third Engineer/work/on the lathe)

.....

(9.3) Make two sentences in Past Simple or Past Continuous as in the example. Add anything necessary.

#### Example:

(electrician/test/alarm circuits/ when/the fire/breakout)

The electrician was testing the alarm circuits when the fire broke out.

1. vessel/sail/along the Suez Canal/when/the message/ arrive

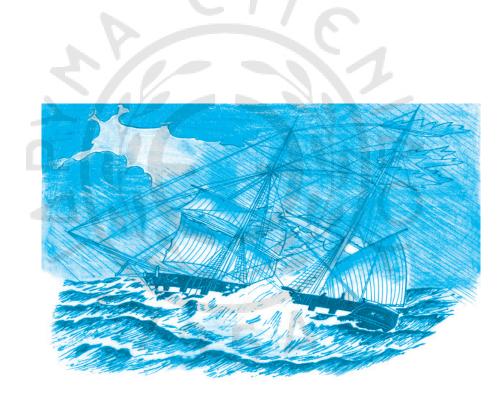
.....



2.		
3.	repair team/overhaul/the auxiliary	engine/ when/the signal to sail at once/arrive.
4.		nachinery space/ when/automated machinery/start.
5.		Inch/the lifeboats
6.		eather forecast/when/the SOS/come through
(9.	4) Put in the Simple Past or the l	Past Continuous:
1.	My ship (list)	but it (stop) after jettisoning.
2.	When we (sight)	the distressed vessel, she (transfer)
	cargo in order to stop listing.	
3.	Our vessel (drift, already)	at 5 knots, when assistance (arrive)
4.	When after grounding, the maste	(realise) that the ship (sink),
	he (order)	his crew to abandon ship.
5.	While the passengers (abandon)	
	them.	
6.	The crew (lower)	the lifeboat when the cable (give way)
7.	While the vessel (sail)	through the night, the crew (sleep)
8.	The vessel (get)	close to position when she (encounter)
	barrels with dangerous	
9.	I (try)	to proceed to port without assistance, when a tugboat (appear)
	closing in fast.	
10	. When we (arrive) crude oil.	in position the tanker (spill)
(9.	5) After finding the meaning of th correct form:	ne verbs in parenthesis, put the pairs of verbs in the blanks in the
Ex	ample:	
	J sailed into the bay with were cruising in the area	<u>caution because small fishing boats</u> around (sail/cruise)
1.	-	we it on port side.(approach/keep)



- 3. "What \_\_\_\_\_\_ when I called?" "I \_\_\_\_\_\_ the pilot ladder."(*do/rig*)
- 4. As the pilot \_\_\_\_\_\_ not alter our course. (*clear/can*)
- 5. They \_\_\_\_\_\_ icebreaker assistance while the blizzard \_\_\_\_\_\_. (suspend/go on)
- 6. We \_\_\_\_\_\_ as the distance between the vessels \_\_\_\_\_\_. (*watch/increase*)
- 7. The other vessels \_\_\_\_\_\_ clear of me, because I \_\_\_\_\_ with difficulty. (*keep/manoeuvre*)
- 8. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ back to port because I \_\_\_\_\_\_ stability problems due to heavy icing. (*sail/have*)
- 9. As I \_\_\_\_\_\_ variable visibility, I \_\_\_\_\_\_ the ship's lights and posted a lookout.(*expect/turn on*)





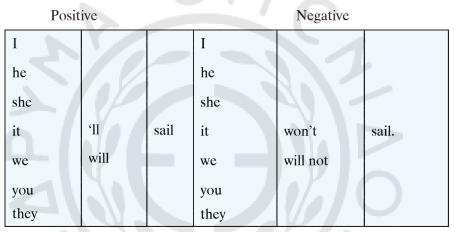
# Simple Future (shall/will), Going to S. Present & Present C. as Future

# A. ΑΠΛΟΣ ΜΕΛΛΟΝΤΑΣ ΜΕ Shall/Will ('ll).

#### 1. Κατασκευή.

Βοηθητικό φήμα shall/will + Απαφέμφατο (infinitive)

#### 2. Κλίση.



\* Μπορούμε επίσης να χρησιμοποιήσουμε το βοηθητικό ρήμα shall με Ι και we.

Οι σχετικοί τύποι είναι:

I / we shall ('ll ) sail,	shall I / we sail ?	I / we shall not (shan't) sail.
	95K	

Question

Short answer

	Ι			Ι	
	he			he	
	she		Yes,	she	will
Will	it	sail?		it	
	we		No,	we	won't
	you			you	
	they			they	



# **4. Χ**ϱήση.

<ul> <li>Χρησιμοποιούμε τον Απλό Μέλλοντα για να</li></ul>	The new Training Ship <b>will cost</b> \$10 million.
εκφράσομε μελλοντικά σχέδια, γεγονότα και	She <b>won't be</b> ready until the end of next year.
προβλέψεις.	How many cadets <b>will</b> practice on board ?
<ul> <li>Επίσης αποφάσεις και προσφορές (ιδιαίτερα</li></ul>	I will never work on a tanker again.
κατά τη στιγμή της συνομιλίας), αυθόρμητες	Wait here ! I'll be back in a minute.
υποσχέσεις και απειλές.	I like the boat. I'll give you 10 million for it.
N.B. Όταν μπροστά στο Shall/Will υπάρχει χρονικό (when, before κλπ.) ή υποθετικό (if, whether, κλπ.) αφαιρούμε το Shall/Will.	I will tell her <b>when I see</b> her. <b>If I see</b> her, I will tell her.

# B. ΜΕΛΛΟΝΤΑΣ ME : Going to

# 1. Κατασκευή.

Pήμα be + Going to + απα0έμφατο

# **2.** Κλίση.

Positi	ve		Neg	gative	
Ι	am ('m)		Ι	am not ('m not)	
he			Не		
she	is $(4)$	going to sail	she	is not (isn't)	going to sail.
it	is ('s)	going to sail.	it		
we			we		
you	are ('re)		you	are not (aren't)	
they		10	they	are not (aren t)	
Ques	stion	19	54	Short Ans	
Are you going to sail ?		Yes, I am.			
		No, I'm not.			

# **3. Χ**ϱήση.

<ul> <li>Χρησιμοποιούμε τον Μέλλοντα με Going to:</li> <li>Για να εχφράσομε αποφάσεις, προθέσεις και σχέδια.</li> </ul>	The Shipping Co. <i>«Krystal Marine»</i> is going to buy a new tanker soon. They are not going to give us any more credit. The Company is going to order three more super-tankers.
---	--



με βεβαιότητα επειδή υπάρχουν σαφείς	The sea is too rough. I'm sure the Coastguard <b>is not</b> <b>going to allow</b> any ships to sail. Stay clear! That ship <b>is going to sail</b> past us.
--------------------------------------	---

# Γ. ΜΕΛΛΟΝΤΑΣ ΜΕ : Απλό Ενεστώτα και Ενεστώτα Διαρκείας.

<ul> <li>Μπορούμε να εκφράσουμε Μέλλοντα με Simple Present ειδικά για δραστηριότητες που αναφέρονται σε συγκεκριμένο πρό- γραμμα.</li> </ul>	The <i>s/s "KENDAVROS"</i> sails to Venice at 07.00 on Friday morning. The Cadet says(that) classes begin next Monday. The vessel from Brindisi arrives here at 20.00 this evening. Hurry up, please! My plane flies in 15 minutes.
<ul> <li>Μπορούμε να εκφράσουμε Μέλλοντα με Present Continuous ειδικά για δρα- στηριότητες που είναι προσχεδιασμένες ή που έχουμε συγκεκριμένη πρόθεση να πραγματοποιήσουμε και για τις οποίες έ- χουμε κάνει ρυθμίσεις.</li> </ul>	The Cadet <b>is taking</b> five courses this coming semester. What <b>are you doing</b> tonight ? I have a ticket for the theatre. <b>I'm going</b> with Maria. The Cadet has an appointment. He' <b>s seeing</b> Master Triandis tomorrow at 10.00. No, he <b>is not coming</b> to the party. I'm afraid <b>he's working</b> tonight.

#### Notes:

# **PRACTICE** (Unit 10).

#### 🗷 Exercises.

#### (10.1) Put the verbs in parentheses in the Future Tense. Use will to express future plans!

The cargo-vessel "*ELENI*" under the command of Captain A. Zeppos (enter) \_\_\_\_\_\_ dry-dock tomorrow for a general survey and she (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ ready in two weeks. Then she (call) \_\_\_\_\_\_ at Candia to load some cargo and to take on some passengers. Her next port of call (be)



Argostoli and then she (sail)	to Piraeus by way of the Corinth Canal. In
Piraeus Captain Zeppos (get)	in touch with the ship-owners to arrange the ship's future
sailing programme. *	
* This text was adapted from "MAOHMATA AITAI	КН $\Sigma$ " by $\Delta$ . Потаµиа́vo5.
(10.2) Use WILL to express future facts, pred	ictions, decisions, offers, promises, threats!
1. This is the M/V "STAVROULA". I (act) _	as a Co-ordinator Surface Search. I (show)
[the] following lights.	
2. When (arrive, you) a	t distress position?
3. OK. I (send) boat to pick	up doctor.
4. Don't worry! Boat (arrive)	at UTC
5. How many lifeboats (launch, you)	
6. (Abandon, you)vessel? I	
7. "Don't move or I (shoot)!"	threatened the pirate.
8. If you don't change course fast, the vessel (I	pe, soon) in trouble.
9. Don't call the police. They	_ kill you.
(10.3) Put the verbs in the GOING TO Futur	e to express prior plan:
1. Why did you change course? Because I (sai	via the Poros Channel.
2. I talked to the Captain yesterday. He is tire	ed of the new Mate. He (fire) him at the
next port.	
3. Look at those clouds! There (be)	a storm soon. Hurry up! Tell everybody on board to
prepare for it.	
4. When (you, have)	a holiday? I'm afraid I (have, not)
	all leave because of the war in the Gulf.
5. Are you free this afternoon? No, I (meet)	the ship owners. We (arrange)
the vessel's future sails.	
(10.4) Put the verbs in the future. Use WILL	or GOING TO. Remember sometimes you must remove
will.	
1. As the ship (be) here for	at least two more days before it (sail) for
Alexandria, I (visit) the A	
2. What have you come on the bridge for?	(steer) the ship. Oh, really? Then I (stay)
and (keep) yo	
3. Are there enough life-saving appliances for	everyone on board? No, but we (get) some
more when we (arrive) at the	e next port of call. Very well, I (tell) the crew
not to worry then.	
4. There are enough provisions and drinking	g water for 48 hours. Good, I think that 48 hours (be)
enough for the crew to devise	e a means of escaping or get help.



# (10.5) Put the verbs in the Simple Present or the Present Continuous to express future time events, plans, or intentions.

1.	What (do)	after the muster (be)	over? I (go)
		_ to bed, I'm exhausted.	
2.		_ (be) there a fire drill tomorrow? Yes, it (start)	at 6.00 and
	(finish)	at about 7.00.	
3.	There's a music ba	r on board the ship, it (open)	_ early in the evening and (close)
		after midnight, I (go)	tonight. Would you like to meet
	me there?		

- 4. I've been offered the position of chief officer on the "CHRYSSOULA" as from next month. Well, have you decided what to do? Yes, I (not, take) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ it. The ship is fine but the captain and the crew have a terrible reputation.
- 5. Well, have you made all the arrangements? Yes, I've got my discharge book and I (leave) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the day after tomorrow. The plane (take off) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_at 4.00 in the morning. And what time (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in Hong Kong? At 3.00 p.m.!





# Present Perfect Simple (unfinished past + for/since), already, never, ever.

# ΑΠΛΟΣ ΠΑΡΑΚΕΙΜΕΝΟΣ.

#### 1. Κατασκευή.

Βοηθητικό οήμα have + Μετοχή αορίστου (Past Participle)

# 2. Κλίση.

Positive			Neg	gative	
Ι	have ('ve)		I	have not (haven't)	
he			Не		
she	has ( 'a)	belied	she	has not	apilad
it	has ('s)	sailed.	it	(hasn't)	sailed.
we			we		
you	have ('ve)		you	have not	
they	have ('ve)		they	(haven't)	
Question Short answer					
Have	I		Yes,	I	have.

Have	T T		105,	T	nave.
Have	1	10	No,	1	haven't
	he	<b>1 Q</b>	ちび	he	
Has	she	sailed.	Yes,	she	has
1145	it	salled.	No,	it	hasn't
	we			we	
Have	you		Yes,	you	have.
Паче	they		No,	they	haven't

# **3. Χ**ϱήση.

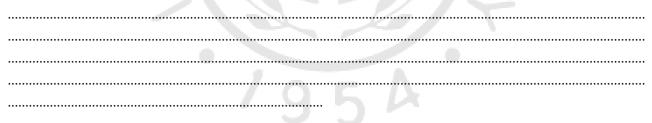


<ul> <li>Ολοκληρωμένες εμπειρίες που είχαμε στη ζωή μας μέχρι τώρα.</li> </ul>	He is an old salt. He's travelled all over the world.Have you ever worked on a tanker? We don't want him. He's never been on a tugboat before
<ul> <li>Πράξεις που άρχισαν στο παρελθόν και δεν έχουν ολοκληρωθεί μέχρι τώρα, συνήθως με since και for.</li> </ul>	The " <i>Lilian</i> " has plied between Patra and Bari <b>for</b> 12 years now. He's been Captain on the " <i>Chryssa</i> " <b>since</b> 1991. How long have you known Captain Lallis?
<ul> <li>Εμπειρίες και πράξεις που έγιναν απροσ- διόριστα στο παρελθόν. Μπορεί να ανα- φέρονται και ποσότητες.</li> </ul>	This shipyard has built a lot of ships for our compa- ny. How many ships have you worked on? I haven't been in many rescue operations

#### Have gone to, have been to, have been in

- The First Engineer has been in England for a month. (This means he's still in England.)
- The mate is not here. He's gone to the "Averoff" in the marina. (This means he's either on his way there, or he has already arrived.)
- I don't think he would like to go. He's been to Paris very often. (This means he's not there now).

#### **Notes:**



#### **PRACTICE** (Unit 11).

#### 🗷 Exercises.

- (11.1) Put into Present Perfect and accommodate the adverbs in parentheses. The first one has been done for you.
- 1. Contact [the] life rafts on radio. (just) <u>J have just contacted [the] life rafts on the radio.</u>
- 2. Join the other lifeboats in sight. (just)

.....

3. Give [the] distress signals for identification. (just)



4.	. Prepare [the] emergency plan for first aid. (already)				
5.	. Stop in [the]present position. (just)				
6.	6. Report your position on [the]telephone. (	• /			
7.	7. Connect [the] cargo hoses. (never)				
8.	8. Check [the] pilot ladder spreaders at once	e. (just)			
(1	(11.2) Write questions in the Present Perfec	et Simple. The first one has been done for you.			
1.	<ol> <li>Throw over board no. 6 lifeboat. (yet) <u>Have you thrown no. 6 lifeboat ov</u></li> </ol>	ver board yet?			
2.	2. Check [the] electrical lighting. (yet)				
3.	3. Fix [a/the] gas fire extinguishing system.				
4.		4. Reduce [the] pressure in water pipes. (just)			
5.	5. Replace [the] missing spanner. (yet)				
6.	6. Free [the] blocked water pipe. (already)				
7.		7. Rig [the] accommodation ladder in combination with (the) pilot ladder.			
(1	(11.3) Put the verbs in parentheses in the Present Perfect Simple (affirmative or negative):				
1.	1. I (transfer) [the]	cargo to stop listing.			
	2. [The] listing (stop)				
3.	3. We (beach) (the)	vessel in position			
	4. They (drift) from				
5.	5. She (require, not)	assistance yet.			
	6. The bosun (rig, not)				
7.	7. Pilot (not, embark)	_yet, as Lavrion Pilot Station (suspend)			
	pilotage.				

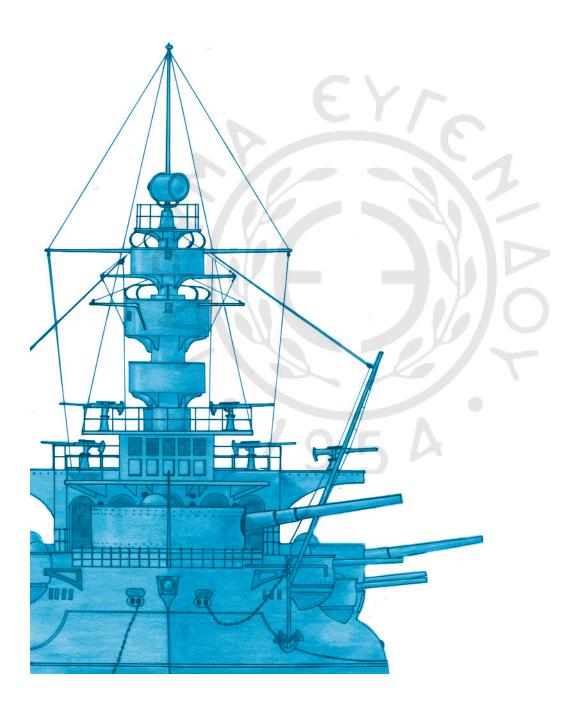
# (11.4) Put the verbs in parentheses in the Present Perfect Simple (interrogative)

# Example:

(see, you) <u>Have you seen</u> the Electrician?



- (jettison, you) \_\_\_\_\_ [the] cargo?
   (you, follow) \_\_\_\_\_ pilot boat where pilot will embark?
- 3. How long (stay, you) \_\_\_\_\_\_ in your present position?
  4. (AB, move) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the pilot ladder 3 metres aft?
- 5. (you, make) \_\_\_\_\_\_ lee on your starboard side?





# **General Practice (Units 6-11)**

#### 🗷 Exercises.

#### (12.1) Write these sentences in the negative.

#### *Example:* He's a sailor.

<u>He isn't a sailor.</u>

- The pump has got a problem.
- 1. The Chief Engineer can repair the damage.
- 2. The ABs are very tired tonight. \_\_\_\_
- 3. This drill holds bits up to 10 mm.
- 4. Internal callipers measure external dimensions.
- 5. Hand drills have motors.

### (12.2) Make the following sentences interrogative:

#### *Example:* He's a sailor.

<u>Js he a sailor?</u>

1. Electric hand drills have motors.

2. A wheel is used for steering a ship.

3. Anchors are used to moor a ship.

4. Deck hands clean the decks every day.

5. The F/B "Jason" sails to Brindisi at 10:00.

6. Very fast ships have got two propellers

#### (12.3) Put into the interrogative/negative. Use you in the questions where applicable.

#### Example: I am rowing.

Are you rowing? J' m not rowing

1. I am on fire.



#### 2. I flooded compartments 1,2, and 3.

- 3. I require pumps.
- 4. He has got a leak.
- 5. They will send pumps.

6. She is going to beach in position...

#### (12.4) Spelling: Put the following into:

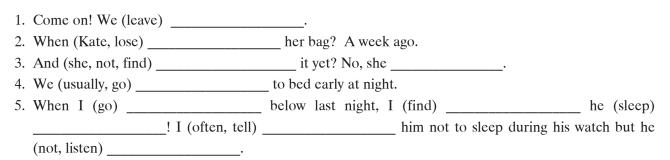
	a) Present Participle	b) Past Participle	c) 3rd person present
1. Align			
2. Fit			
3. Handle			
4. Roll			
5. Lash	SIP		
6. Tally	Y A		
7. Lay			
(12.5) Put the verbs in b	cackets in the correct	tenses:	
By now I (have)	a glass of beer a	at a bar on the sea front. I (	(have) a pleasant
walk an hour ago. I (mee	t) sever	al people I (know)	on the way. One of them
(be) on his	way to meet his father	, Captain G. Lallis. He (be)	master on a large
container ship. He (comm	and)a	crew of 22 men and 10 offic	ers. As I (finish)
my beer I (see)	one of the bigges	t cruising ships in the world.	She (just, enter)
port. I must say, I (have)	a good	time today. *	
* This text was adapted from	"МАӨНМАТА АГГЛІК	ΉΣ" by Δ. Ποταμιάνος.	

#### (12.6) Put the verbs in the right tenses.

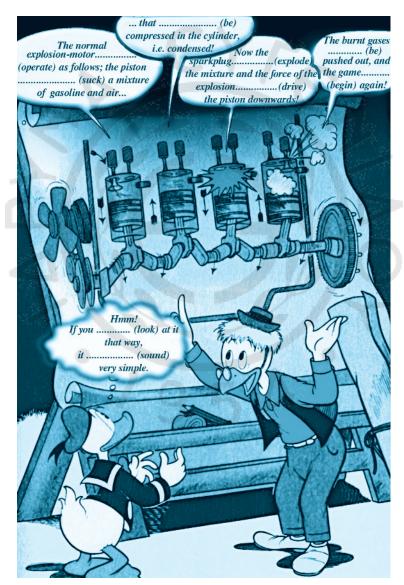
- 1. We (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a tug in about 15 minutes.
- 2. The tug boat (pass, just) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the breakwater light house and is making for you.
- 3. A pilot boat (approach) \_\_\_\_\_, sir!
- 4. When the propeller was clear the mate (report) \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the bridge right away.
- 5. Wait until we (give) \_\_\_\_\_ you the order!..
- 6. This is aft station. We (clear) \_\_\_\_\_ the aft vessel just now.
- "Stand by for anchoring, forward station!"
   "Which anchor (stand by) \_\_\_\_\_?"



#### (12.7) Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form:



#### 12.8 Describing process. Put the verbs in parentheses in the right form:





Have

#### ΕΙΣΑΓΩΓΗ.

have, have got (βλέπε: unit 4)

- Το gήμα σημαίνει έχω κάτι = είναι δικό μου We have a new tanker. or We've got a new tanker. The ship has six holds. or The ship has got six holds.
- 2. Το ρήμα have κλίνεται στις ερωτήσεις και αρνήσεις με get ή με do: Have they got a fire fighting team? or Do they have a fire fighting team? What propeller have you got? or What propeller do you have? They haven't got (a) twin propeller. or They don't have a twin propeller.
- A. Το gήμα have σχηματίζει ιατρικές φράσεις και κλίνεται όμοια

I have	a cold, a cough, flu, a sore throat, a temperature, (a) toothache, etc.
I have got/I've got	a headache, a pain in my arm(leg etc), a stomach-ache, etc

The Boson has a headache. or The Bosun has got a headache. Does the Captain have a cold? No, he doesn't (have a cold).

Ο Αόριστος είναι: I had (χωρίς got) / I didn't have / Did you have? The Bosun had brown eyes and dark hair. When I met the Captain at the bar, he didn't have any money. How many members did the rescue team have?

B. To have (*όχι have got*) σχηματίζει οηματικές φράσεις της καθημερινής ζωής:

have/hag/had	something to eat, something to drink, breakfast, dinner, lunch,		
have/has/had	a meal, a sandwich, a cup of coffee, a glass of wine, some soup		
	a walk, a swim, a game (of chess, tennis etc), a bath, a shower,		
have/has/had	a holiday, a party, a rest, a good time, a nice journey, a good sleep,		
	a baby, a dream, an accident, a ride, a lesson, a light, a look, etc.		

Where is the Captain? He's having lunch.(=eat)

The Bosun **doesn't** usually **have breakfast**; he only **has two cups of coffee**. The passengers **had a very good time** on the cruise to the Ionian islands. **Did you have a swim** in the ship's swimming pool?



#### $\Gamma$ . I have to

1. To have to + infinitive σημαίνει OBLIGATION (= είναι αναγκαίο να κάνω κάτι, είμαι υποχοεωμένος να το κάνω).

I/we/you/they have to do/go/work	I/we/you/they don't have to do/go/work
he/she/ it has to <b>do/go/work</b>	he/she/it has to do/go/work
do I/we/you/they have to do/go?	No, I/we/you/they don't.
does he/she/ it have to do/go/work?	Yes, he/she/ it does.

#### Κλίση (όπως για κάθε κανονικό οήμα)

- The rescue team leader has to stand by.
- The Bosun starts work at 08.00. So he has to wake up at 07.00.
- 2. Ο Αόριστος είναι had to
  - The mate had to wait long until the next watch came to relieve him.
  - How long **did** the vessel **have to** wait until the pilot boarded.
  - The Captain didn't have to wait long for the message
- 3. Ο αρνητικός τύπος σημαίνει ότι δεν είναι απαραίτητο ή υποχρεωτικό
  - The Bosun has a day off tomorrow. So he doesn't have to wake up early.
  - The damage control team **didn't have to** report until the next day.
  - You don't have to start damage control right away.
- 4. must και have to (βλέπε επίσης Unit14)

Μπορείς να χρησιμοποιείς το must και το have to όταν λες τη γνώμη σου ότι κάτι είναι απαραίτητο να γίνει:

- It's a fantastic vessel. You must see it. OR You have to see it.
- You must go now. It's time for my watch.
- Ενώ όταν δεν είναι γνώμη σου αλλά κάτι αντικειμενικό να χρησιμοποιείς μόνο have to.
- You have to go now. It's time for your watch. (It's the ship's schedule)
- Young men in Greece have to serve in the armed forces. (It's the law)

#### Notes:

#### Practice Unit (13).

#### 🗷 Exercises.

#### (13.1) What are the crew doing? Use the prompts in the appropriate forms:

#### Example:

(Captain/ breakfast/ dinning saloon) The Captain is having breakfast in the dinning saloon.

1. (ship's officers/ meeting/ officers' room)

.....

2. (fire team/ drill/ the superstructure)

.....



- 3. (passenger/ a good time/ Captain's party)
- .....
- 4. (Bosun/ cup of coffee/ his cabin)
- .....
- 5. (Mate/ something to eat/ after his watch)

.....

#### (13.2) Put in the correct form of have or have got :

#### Example:

What's the matter with you? Do you have (OR have you got) a headache? (you/ have?)

- 1. After visiting the port town: I wanted to buy a suit but ..... enough money.(I / have)
- 2. "..... any problems during your watch?" (you/ have?) No. ..... a quiet watch. (I/ have)
- 3. The Bosun is very busy. ..... much free time. (he /not /have)
- 4. ..... a stomach-ache yesterday. (the Mate/ have) He is better now.
- 5. ..... a nice time at the welcome party last night? (the passengers / have?). Yes, ......

#### (13.3) Decide what you say in these situations. Use the lists of Unit 13 and have:

#### Example:

You meet your friend a the harbour. He travelled on the F/B "King Minos". Ask him about the voyage: Did you have a nice voyage?

- 1. The passenger is going to the swimming pool of the ship. What do you wish him?
- 2. The passenger is coming from the dining saloon. What do you ask her?
- 3. You want to light your cigarette. What do you ask the Bosun?
- 4. You want to make sure the letter is correct. What do you ask the Mate to do?
- 5. The Third Engineer is going below to take over the his watch. What do you say

him? .....

- 6. You want to play tennis. What do you ask the young lady with the racquet?
- (13.4) Use have to, don't have to, has to, doesn't have to, had to, didn'thave to, and one of the verbs in the list:

check come out wear work write use



#### **Example:**

The work of the damage control team is dangerous. So the members have to wear safety helmets.

- 1. At the end of their studies cadets ...... a dissertation.
- 2. After spending three days in the hold the stowaway .....to ask for something to eat.
- 3. A steward ..... hard on a cruising ship.
- 4. G.O.s ..... the wireless any more. There are satellite communications on board ships now.
- 5. The Mate ......the lighting. The Electrician could do it for him.
- 6. The port station says the vessel ......a pilot. She can proceed without a pilot on board.

#### (13.5) Choose the correct answer or write both:

#### **Examples:**

Why is the Bosun going ashore now? He must/has to see somebody. has to both

It's a fantastic vessel. You must/have to see it.

- 1. My watch was out of order. So I must/had to borrow the Bosun's.
- 2. "I really drink too much. I must/ have to stop that."
- 3. There is something wrong with that ship. We must/ have to help.
- 4. You can't park here for free. You must/ have to pay.
- 5. Vessels all over the world *must/ have to* be inspected regularly.





Modals: can, could (ability, requests, permission); would (polite request) should (advice); must (obligation), mustn't (prohibition)

# ΕΓΚΛΙΤΙΚΑ ΡΗΜΑΤΑ.

1. Με το can/could μπορείς να εκφράσεις ικανότητα, δυνατότητα, αιτήματα (φιλικά και τυπικά), καθώς και να ζητήσεις και να δώσεις άδεια (φιλικά και τυπικά).

#### Present.

```
can + infinitive(για το παρόν και το μέλλον)e.g. I can navigatecan you navigate?I cannot navigateORI can't navigate.
```

Past.

could + infinitive (για το παρελθόν)

e.g. I could swim could you swim? I could not swim OR I couldn't swim

- 2. Με το must μπορείς να εκφράσεις υποχρέωση και με το mustn't απαγόρευση ή έντονη σύσταση. must + infinitive (για το παρόν και το μέλλον)
- Με το would μπορείς να ζητήσεις κάτι ευγενικά. would + infinitive
- 4. Με το **should** μπορείς να εκφράσεις ελαφρά υποχρέωση ή συμβουλή. **should + infinitive** (για το παρόν και το μέλλον)

ABILITY/POSSIBILITY	• ΙΚΑΝΟΤΗΤΑ/ΔΥΝΑΤΟΤΗΤΑ
I can sail a big sailing boat. I can change 10,000 Drachmas. This ship cannot sail against winds of 9. I could row a boat when I was ten. I could travel alone if I wanted. As there was no berth available, they could	Know how to do it. It's possible for me to do it. It's not possible/It's forbidden. Knew how. It was possible. It was not possible.
<ul><li>not dock.</li><li>• REQUESTS</li></ul>	• AITHMATA
Can you pick up survivors ?	Ask sb to do sth.



Can you change course ?	Is it possible?
Could I enter the navigation bridge,	
(please)?	Polite request.
Steward, <b>would</b> you please get me a cup of	
coffee?	
Would you like some tea?	
• PERMISSION	• ΑΔΕΙΑ
Can I sail your boat, please ?	Is it okay to do it?
Can I speak to the helmsman?	N/ N
E C	Y /
ADVICE/LIGHT OBLIGATION	• ΣΥΜΒΟΥΛΗ/ΕΛΑΦΡΑ ΥΠΟΧΡΕΩΣΗ
You should obey all instructions on board a	That is the safe thing to do.
ship.	
You should always help your fellow seamen.	You owe it to them, as you all do a difficult,
	dangerous job.
• OBLIGATION (βλ. επίσης Unit 13)	• ΥΠΟΧΡΕΩΣΗ
	His passport is not enough in China.
He <b>must</b> have a visa.	Otherwise the ship may be in trouble.
Engines <b>must</b> be inspected regularly.	Omerwise the ship may be in trouble.
• PROHIBITION	• ΑΠΑΓΟΡΕΥΣΗ
The crew <b>mustn't</b> go ashore without the	It is not allowed. (It's forbidden!)
captain's permission.	the second state of the se
The helmsman <b>mustn't</b> be tired during his	It would be unsafe!
shift.	

#### Notes:

# **PRACTICE** (unit 14) Modals.

#### *Exercises.*

(14.1) Ask or answer questions in the positive/ negative/ interrogative (ABILITY):



#### Example:

Can you pick up survivors? <u>Yes, J can pick up survivors.</u> <u>No, J cannot pick up survivors.</u>

- 1. Can you alter course to ... degrees?
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_

No, I cannot carry out a radar search.

3. \_\_\_\_\_

Yes, we can resume search in position

- 4. Could you continue the search after dark?
- 5.

Yes, I could make a rendezvous in position ...

6. \_\_\_\_\_

No, I could not transfer person to my vessel by boat.

1.10

- 7. Can you proceed without assistance?
- 8. Deck hands can clean the decks.

#### (14.2) Answer in the negative and the interrogative (PERMISSION, REQUEST):

#### **Example:**

Can I come on board and explain? <u>Yes, you can come on board and explain</u>. No, you can't come on board and explain.

- 1. Can you instruct the Pumpman and report?
- 2. Can I stop [the] search and proceed [with] my voyage?



- 3. Can I request [an] escort?
- 4. Could I assist with [the] search in vicinity of my position?
- 5. Could I ask what the result of the search was?
- 6. Can we deliver [a/the] sick person?

(14.3) Write questions and answers using the following prompts (ABILITY):

#### **Example:**

Find the stowaway.

Can you find the stowaway? Yes, J can/No, J can't

1. Stop spillage.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Identify polluter.

......

.....

.....

3. Locate the engine problem.

4. Select correct wire.

5 Inform the lookouts

5. Inform the lookouts.

(14.4) Make sentences in the affirmative/negative, add anything necessary (ABILITY):

#### Example:

boat/float on water/fly.

A boat can float on water but it cannot (can't) fly.

1. Fish/swim/breath air.

.....

2. The crew/switch on [the] anchor lights/hoist [the] anchor ball.

.....

..... 4. [A] vessel/berth alongside/moor to buoy. ..... 5. [The] Third Mate/read standing orders/issue standing orders. ..... (14.5) Use must and because: **Example:** (visit my company/ find a ship) J must visit my company because J must find a ship. 1. (overhaul pump No. 2 /repair it) ..... 2. (go aft/speak to the Bosun) ..... 3. (go below/see the Third Engineer) ..... 4. (go to the bridge/talk to the Captain) ..... 5. (search the chartroom/find that map) ..... (14.6) Use must and/or mustn't and the parenthesis. The first one has been done for you. **Example:** (leave open/ keep shut). Be careful! These doors must not be left open; they must always be kept shut. 1. (enter an unmanned machinery space/have permission). Caution! A sailor .....

3. ABs/keep propeller clear/stop propeller.

- .....
- 2. (neglect his ship's lights/maintain lighting at all times)

The electrician.....

.....at all times.



4. (work without ear defenders/wear ear plugs at all times)

Crew working near high noise levels.....

..... at all times.

(14.7) Complete the sentences as in the example. Use *should* and the list to show *advice/ light obligation*:

always be dressed, go on a diet, do all the safety drills, sail slowly, always listen to

#### Example:

The Captain is too fat. He <u>should go on a diet</u> at once.

- 1. The fog is too dense. The vessel ..... and carefully.
- 2. Small vessels ..... the weather forecast, before sailing.
- 3. Crews of cargo ships ..... without fail.
- 4. The officers of luxurious cruising ships ..... in spotless uniforms.





# **General Practice (13-14)**

#### **Choose the right answer:**

- The Captain is an excellent chess player. He ..... play chess very well.
   A. must B. can. C. mustn't
- You ..... enter this room. It says "Entrance Forbidden" A. mustn't B. couldn't C. don't have to
- 3. I was thirsty, so I ..... a glass of water. A. have got B got C. had
- Visibility is very poor. So we ..... sail very slowly and carefully.
   A. have to B. got to C. could
- 5. Anyone who works in the engine room ...... wear overalls and a helmet. A. could B. should C. would
- Captain Marinos was very well educated man. He ..... speak four languages.
   A. could B. would C. should
- You .....never swim after you have eaten. It's very dangerous.
   A. must B. can C. mustn't
- 8. The Bosun ..... time to check the cargo yesterday.A. hasn't got B. didn't have C. didn't have to
- 9. ..... check all the lifeboats today?A. Have you got B. Do you have to C. Must you to
- 10. We wanted to travel cabin class, but we ..... enough money.A. didn't B haven't got C. didn't have
- 11. The Bosun ..... swim when he was only three.A. can B. could C. should
- 12. Don't worry. He ..... drown. He is wearing a life jacket.A. shouldn't B. wouldn't C. can't



- The G.O. ..... send the message now. He is listening to the emergency frequency. A. can't B. hasn't C. hasn't got
- 14. Enjoy your cruise to the Caribbean. ..... a good time!A. Have B. Had C. Had you
- 15. It's very a very warm afternoon. ..... you like some Ice-cream?A. Could B. Would C. Should





# **Imperatives (commands, informal requests)**

# ΠΡΟΣΤΑΚΤΙΚΗ.

#### 1. Κατασκευή.

Η προσταχτική κατασκευάζεται από το γυμνό απαρέμφατο (bare infinitive/verb word) e.g. Affirmative: do, go, come Negative: don't do, don't go, don't come.

#### 2. Κλίση-Χοήση.

Η Προστακτική έχει μόνο β΄ πρόσωπο (ενικού και πληθυντικού), καθώς και μόνο καταφατικό και αρνητικό τύπο.

Explanations	Examples
<ul> <li>Η Προστακτική είναι στον τύπο του bare infinitive (go come!).</li> <li>Το υποκείμενο you νοείται αλλά δεν λέγεται παρά μόνο σε περιπτώσεις ειδικής εμφάσεως.</li> <li>Για να σχηματίσουμε τον αρνητικό τύπο, θέτουμε don't μπροστά από το bare infinitive.</li> </ul>	AFFIRMATIVE Telephone the navigating bridge. Me, never! You do it! NEGATIVE Do not (don't) use lifts.
• Η Προστακτική χρησιμοποιείται:	
<ul> <li>Για να δίνονται οδηγίες.</li> <li>Για αιτήματα.</li> <li>Για διαταγές.</li> <li>Για προσκλήσεις, προσφορές, προτάσεις. Για έμφαση χρησιμοποιούμε το do, e.g. Do sit down.</li> </ul>	Switch on the night-lights of the ship. Hand me that spanner over there. Open the hatches! Come and have coffee with me. Have a biscuit, they're very nice. Do listen to me, please!



<ul> <li>Επίσης χρησιμοποιούμε let/don't let + tag με shall, will ή άλλο modal για προτροπή ή πρόταση. (Για περισσότερα περί Question tags βλέπε Unit 19)</li> </ul>	Let's have a surprise party for the passengers tonight, <b>shall we</b> ? Give me the spanner, <b>can you</b> ? Shut up, <b>can't you</b> ? Pass me the salt, <b>could you</b> ? Don't forget, <b>will you</b> ?
<ul> <li>Προκειμένου για αιτήματα διατυπωμένα με ευγενικό τρόπο, προστίθεται η λέξη please.</li> <li>(Στην αρχή ή στο τέλος)</li> </ul>	Please, call the Captain. Or Call the Captain, please. Please, sit down, next to me.
<ul> <li>Σε επίσημες οδηγίες, εντολές, προειδοποιήσεις,</li> <li>κλπ. χρησιμοποιούμε ένα υποκείμενο για να προ- καλέσουμε την προσοχή των ενδιαφερομένων.</li> </ul>	All vessels, navigate with caution!

#### Notes:



# PRACTICE (Unit 16).

#### 🗷 Exercises.

(16.1) Put into the imperative. The first one has been done for you

#### a: Affirmative

- 1. Children on board must be kept under permanent observation. Keep children on board under permanent observation
- 2. The pressure must be raised to 15 kg.
- 3. The gangway must be hoisted right now.
- 4. The revolutions must be increased up to 75.
- 5. We'll discharge the sludge at the next port.



- 6. The motor must be lifted with the chain hoist.
- 7. You must stay in vicinity of [the] pollution and co-operate with [the] oil clearance team.
- 8. You should keep in contact on VHF channel ...
- 9. Vessels in vicinity of position ... should keep a sharp look-out for aircraft

#### **b:** Negative.

- 10. The crew mustn't leave the chamber door open. *Don't leave the chamber door open.*
- 11. You mustn't handle this with bare hands.
- 12. You mustn't pass ahead of me.
- 13. You mustn't remove this cap from the plug leads.
- 14. You shouldn't switch on the ignition before checking.
- 15. Vessels in vicinity of position ...mustn't navigate at over 10 knots. Vessels in vicinity of position ...\_\_\_\_\_
- Vessels in area ... mustn't navigate without caution.
   Vessels in area ...
- 17. You mustn't open the valve until I say "OK."
- 18. You mustn't use force to open the cover; it may crack.



(16.2) Use the imperative to make: suggestions, offers, invitations. (Use do, let, don't, and appropriate tags: can, could, will, shall where necessary).

Examples:

The Second Engineer wants to act immediately, but you don't want him to hurry *Let's just not hurry, could we?* 

You do not want [the] patrol boat to approach the scene of the accident. Emphasise. *Do not allow [the] patrol boat to approach*.

- 1. There is an engine problem. Suggest the Third Engineer should check with the manual.
- 2. The cadet is very lonely. Offer him a drink at the ship's bar.
- 3. You would like your new friend to have dinner at your table. Invite her informally.
- 4. The cadets are lowering the launch. Ask them to be careful most emphatically.
- 5. You want the patrol boat to identify the polluter. Request it emphatically.
- 6. You do not want life boat No. 5 launched. Emphasize.





#### 1. Εισαγωγή.

Η παθητική φωνή χρησιμοποιείται όταν θέλετε να τονίσετε τι γίνεται και όχι τι κάνει κάποιος he/she/it κλπ. Γι' αυτό το λόγο χρησιμοποιείται πάρα πολύ στα Τεχνικά Αγγλικά (Technical English). e.g.

CAPTAIN: Have the passengers been shown how to wear their lifejackets?

MATE: Yes, sir. They have.

Ο πλοίαρχος χρησιμοποιεί παθητική φωνή επειδή θέλει να ξέρει αν έγινε η ενέργεια και όχι ποιος την έκανε.

#### 2. Σχηματισμός.

Bοηθητικό οήμα **be** (is/was/were/have been, etc.) + παθητική μετοχή (**past participle:** sailed, scrubbed, built, etc.)

#### 3. Κλίση.

Present	Past	Future	Present Perfect
am/is/are built	was/were built	shall/will be built	have/has been built
am/is/are/ not built	was/were not built	shall/will <b>not</b> built	have/has <b>not</b> been built
is <i>it</i> built?	was <i>it</i> built?	will <i>it</i> be built?	has <i>it</i> been built?

#### 4. Μετατοοπή.

Είναι εύχολο να μετατρέψετε μια πρόταση από την ενεργητική στην παθητική φωνή: Απλά κάντε το αντικείμενο της ενεργητικής υποκείμενο της παθητικής και κατόπιν βάλτε το ρήμα στην παθητική φωνή στον ίδιο τύπο, αλλά αφού πρώτα το ταιριάξετε με το καινούργιο υποκείμενο:

e.g.

(ACTIVE)	They scrub <b>the deck</b> every day.
(PASSIVE)	<b>The deck</b> is scrubbed every day.
(ACTIVE)	They scrubbed <b>the deck</b> yesterday.
(PASSIVE)	<b>The dec</b> k was scrubbed yesterday.
(ACTIVE)	They will scrub <b>the deck</b> tomorrow.
(PASSIVE)	<b>The deck</b> will be scrubbed tomorrow.
(ACTIVE)	They have already scrubbed <b>the deck</b> .



(PASSIVE) The deck has already been scrubbed.

#### 5. Παθητική + by (ποιητικό αίτιο).

Αν είναι απαραίτητο ή το θεωρείτε σημαντικό να πείτε ποιος έκανε κάτι στην παθητική φωνή, είναι εύκολο να το κάνετε. Απλά προσθέστε by + agent.

e.g. (Active) (Passive)	<b>Captain Gerry</b> sails the " <i>Chryssa</i> ". The "Chryssa" is sailed by <b>Captain Gerry</b> .
(Active)	<b>M.C. Smith</b> wrote the " <i>Polar Star</i> ".
(Passive)	The "Polar Star" was written by M.C. Smith.

#### Notes:

# Practice (Unit 17).

🗷 Exercises.

#### (17.1) Put the verbs in the Simple Present of the Passive Voice:

- 1. Good ships <u>are built</u> (build) in Japan.
- 2. The operation of the engine \_\_\_\_\_ (control) all the time.
- 3. Coal \_\_\_\_\_ (form) in the earth.
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_\_vessels \_\_\_\_\_\_(survey) very often?
- 5. Steam \_\_\_\_\_ (carry) along a jet of water.
- 6. This engine \_\_\_\_\_ (switch) on automatically.
- 7. This engine \_\_\_\_\_\_ (switch) off manually.

#### (17.2) Put the verbs in the Simple Past of the Passive Voice:

- 1. The water <u>was pumped</u> (pump) out at once.
- 2. The drums \_\_\_\_\_\_ (fill) with water.
- 3. Hot plastic \_\_\_\_\_\_ (force) into the opening.
- 4. The life-boat \_\_\_\_\_ (not, launch) quickly enough.
- 5. The diagrams \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_ the cargo \_\_\_\_\_\_ (jettison) ?

#### (17.3) Put the verbs in the Future Simple of the Passive Voice:

- 1. The new tanker <u>will be launched</u> (launch) next month.
- 2. Water \_\_\_\_\_ (allow) in by this valve.



3.	The M/S Eleni T.	(enter) dry dock next week.
4.	this engine	(use) for her propulsion?

- 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (pilot boat, follow) inward?
- 6. You \_\_\_\_\_ (not, meet) by tug. Proceed on your own.

### (17.4) Put the verbs in the Present Perfect of the passive voice:

- 1. Pumps <u>have been sent</u> (send) to the distressed vessel.
- 2. I cannot move. My propeller \_\_\_\_\_ (damage).
- 3. The damage \_\_\_\_\_ (not, repair) yet. I' m still drifting.
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_\_the leakage \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (stop) yet?
- 5. The vessel \_\_\_\_\_\_ already \_\_\_\_\_\_ (survey).
- (17.5) Write sentences in the Passive Voice from the words in brackets (add any missing words and put the verbs in an appropriate form):

twice.

soon.

- (Cabin / clean / every day)
   <u>The cabin</u> is cleaned every day.
- 2. (ship / register / last year)
- 3. (fire pumps / require / M/V "Jackie")
- 4. (fire / put / under control)
- 5. (you /almost/ trim / by the head)
- 6. (MV "Rena"/already/beach/in position...)
- 7. (MV "Helga"/ abandon /after piracy)

#### (17.6) Put the sentences in the Passive Voice:

- 1. The crew jettisoned part of the cargo. <u>Part of the cargo was jetissoned by the crew</u>.
- 2. They transferred bunkers.

3. Pirates have attacked the vessel.

4. The crew will abandon the vessel.

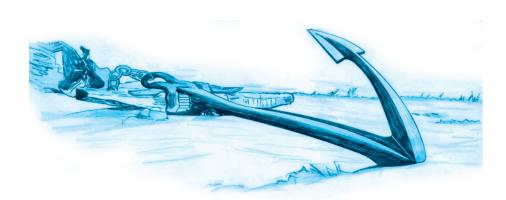
5. Have the ABs launched the lifeboats?



- 6. The Captain reports five injured.
- 7. The officer carried out radar research.
- 8. They did not require medical assistance.
- 9. They picked up all survivors from the sea.
- 10. They have rescued all persons on board.

(17.7) Put the verbs in parenthesis in the passive voice and in the right form:

- 1. A rudder \_\_\_\_\_ (fit) at the stern-post of a ship.
- 2. The propeller-shaft \_\_\_\_\_ (connect) to the engine yesterday.
- 3. The ship \_\_\_\_\_ (load) tomorrow.
- 4. Many vessels \_\_\_\_\_ (wreck) in the Bermuda Triangle so far.
- 5. How many passengers \_\_\_\_\_ (save)?
- 6. "\_\_\_\_\_the men \_\_\_\_\_(call) on deck?" "Yes, sir. They have."
- 7. What \_\_\_\_\_\_ the men\_\_\_\_\_\_ ( order) to do?" "To take their positions."
- 8. A good look-out \_\_\_\_\_always\_\_\_\_\_(keep) on the bridge.
- 9. We can't change the ship's sailing programme. It \_\_\_\_already\_\_\_\_\_ (arrange).





# Verb Forms: Conditionals (Type 0, Type 1, Type 2)

# Zero Type

#### 1. Κατασκευή.

Αν + Απλός Ενεστώτας - Απλός Ενεστώτας/Προσταχτιχή

IF + SIMPLE PRESENT,	SIMPLE PRESENT/ IMPERATIVE
----------------------	----------------------------

#### **2. Χ**ϱήση.

Αναφέρεται σε γεγονότα, φαινόμενα, συνήθειες, αλήθειες κλπ. στο παρόν.

If the captain has time when he is in Piraeus, he always visits his brother. (standard habits) If you heat water to 100 degrees, it boils. (It always happens -natural law) If you arrive there too early, don't sail in at once. (Wait until you receive the signal).

**N.B.** Δεν χρησιμοποιούμε κόμμα όταν αντιστρέφουμε τον υποθετικό λόγο, π.χ. Don't eat it if you don't like it.

#### Type 1.

#### 1. Κατασκευή.

Av + Ενεστώτας (Απλός ή Διαρκείας) - Απλός Μέλλοντας (will, can, may etc)

IF + PRESENT(SIMPLE/CONTINUOUS), SIMPLE FUTURE (WILL, CAN, MAY, etc.)

#### 2. Χϱήση.

Αναφέgεται στο παρόν ή στο μέλλον, σε πιθανά γεγονότα ή σε καταστάσεις και στα αποτελέσματά τους. If you observe all the rules and regulations, you will be safe. (reassurance)

The crew will help you if it is necessary. (reassurance)

If you hear the fire alarm signal, you must not return to your cabin. (warning)

If the ship sails tonight, I may not be able to see you.(probability)

**N.B.**  $\Delta \epsilon v \chi construction value with a structure for the test of the versel sails tonight? Yes, I will./ No, I won't.$ 

#### Type 2.

#### 1. Κατασκευή.

- α. Γενικά: Aν + Απλός Αόριστος would, could, might, κλπ. + Απαρέμφατο
- β. Για το ρήμα be: Av + were (was στην καθομιλουμένη) would, could, κλπ + Απαρέμφατο



IF + PAST SIMPLE,	WOULD, COULD, MIGHT + INFINITIVE
IF + WERE (WAS informal)	WOULD, COULD, MIGHT + INFINITIVE

#### **2. Χ**ϱήση.

Αναφέρεται στο παρόν σε απίθανες ή απραγματοποίητες καταστάσεις και τα αποτελέσματά τους.

The compressor would always work if you overhauled it periodically.	But you don't!
If there were any crewmembers missing, they would report it.	Unreal! There
	aren't !
Accidents wouldn't happen if the crew weren't so careless.	Unreal! They are!
I would be nicer for the ABs, if I was (were) the captain.	But I am not!

N.B. Δεν χρησιμοποιούμε κόμμα όταν αντιστρέφουμε τον υποθετικό λόγο, π.χ. Would the vessel shift from its berth if they completed the cargo work? Yes, it would./No, it wouldn't.

#### Notes:

110125.

# PRACTICE (Unit 18).

#### 🛎 Exercises.

(18.1) Put the verbs in the appropriate forms of Conditional Type 0:

- 1. If visibility (be) \_\_\_\_\_ poor, ships (have to) \_\_\_\_\_ whistle.
- 2. The helmsman (report) \_\_\_\_\_\_ immediately if the vessel (answer, not) (the) wheel.
- 3. If any vessel (pass) \_\_\_\_\_\_ with CPA less than .... miles, (call) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the Master.
- Master.

   4. If you (detect) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a fire on board, (act) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ immediately as follows.

   5. (call out) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ "Man overboard" if you (see) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ anybody fall over
- board.
- 6. If you (have) \_\_\_\_\_\_ any questions about safety, (hesitate, not) \_\_\_\_\_\_ to ask any of the ship's officers.

# (18.2) Put the verbs in the appropriate forms of Conditional Type 1:

- 1. If you (moor) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the ship correctly, it (move, not) \_\_\_\_\_\_ away from the quay-side.
- 2. If you (have, not) \_\_\_\_\_\_ enough patience to make a good angler, you (try, may) \_\_\_\_\_\_ fishing with nets.
- 3. If the vessel (sail) \_\_\_\_\_\_ now, she (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_\_ in Venice in two days' time.



- 4. If you (alter) \_\_\_\_\_\_ course to port, the pilot boat (clear) \_\_\_\_\_\_ [the] vessel. 5. You (get) \_\_\_\_\_\_ several bites in an hour or so if you (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ a lucky fisherman. 6. You (put on) \_\_\_\_\_\_ your lifejacket if there (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ an emergency. 7. If you (install) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the valve, you (remove) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the carbon deposits on the valve seat first. (18.3) Put the verbs in the appropriate forms of Conditional Type 2: 1. If you (hurry) \_\_\_\_\_\_, you (miss) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the "Flying Dolphin". 2. If they (need) \_\_\_\_\_\_ their lifejackets, they (find) \_\_\_\_\_\_ them under the bed. 3. If one of your cabin mates (not, be able) \_\_\_\_\_\_ to attend the roll call, you (inform) \_\_\_\_\_ an officer immediately. 4. You (ask) \_\_\_\_\_ any of the ship's officers if you (have) \_\_\_\_\_ any questions regarding safety. 5. Access to the area (be forbidden) \_\_\_\_\_\_ if the fire (be, not) \_\_\_\_\_\_ under control. 6. If I (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the position of chief mate on the S/S "LIL-IAN". (18.4) Conditionals 0, 1, 2. Put the verbs in the correct forms: 1. If the officer (say) Vessels in area \_\_\_\_\_ "This is a roll-call," he (call) \_\_\_\_\_ out the passengers by their names. 2. Be careful! If you (slack off) \_\_\_\_\_\_, I (tell) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the Captain at once. 3. If the engine had been overhauled in time the vessel \_\_\_\_\_(not, be) without power in the middle of the ocean now. 4. If the ship (call) at port, the Dockers would load the cargo promptly. 5. If anyone fell overboard, a special alarm \_\_\_\_\_ (sound) at once and engines \_\_\_\_\_ (stop). 6. Engineers would be wearing helmets if they \_\_\_\_\_ (overhaul) the engine.
- 7. When the crew \_\_\_\_\_ (handle) chemicals they should always wear special goggles.





# **Verb Forms: Question Tags**

# 1. Εισαγωγή.

Οι ερωτήσεις επιβεβαιώσεως μπορεί να είναι καταφατικές ή αρνητικές. Προστίθενται στο τέλος μιας δηλώσεως και ζητούν κυρίως επιβεβαίωση.

# 2. Κατασκευή.

Οι ερωτήσεις επιβεβαιώσεως σχηματίζονται:

Actumine perfective (TROTER ACAMMART) + Theoremeter (SOBJECT)				
AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE TAG	EXPECTED ANSWER		
STATEMENT		AFFIRMATIVE		
The captain is angry with me,	isn't he?	Yes, he is.		
The vessel sails in a minute,	doesn't it ?	Yes, it does.		
The last ferry has sailed,	hasn't she ?	Yes, she has.		
The mate went aft,	didn't he ?	Yes, he did.		

# Κατάλληλο βοηθητικό (PROPER AUXILIARY) + Υποκείμενο (SUBJECT)

NEGATIVE STATEMENT	AFFIRMATIVE	EXPECTED ANSWER
•	TAG	NEGATIVE
You don't believe in training,	do you ?	No, I don't.
We are not behind schedule,	are we ?	No, you are not.
He doesn't have to do this,	does he?	No, he doesn't.
They will not sell the vessel,	will they ?	No, they won't.

SPECIAL CASES	
<ul> <li>Χρησιμοποιούμε <u>it</u> για this, that, everything, nothing.</li> </ul>	That is Athina's yacht over there, isn't it?
• και they για these, those, everybody, someone,	Everybody is on board, aren't they?
somebody, no one, nobody.	No one was in the cabin, were they?
<ul> <li>Λέμε am I not (formal) και</li> </ul>	I am the authority here, am I not?
aren't I (informal, spoken).	I'm your friend, aren't I?

# **PRACTICE** (Unit 19).

### *Exercises.*

#### (19.1) Write question tags. The first one has been done for you.

Examples:		
He has never transmitted signals, <u>has he</u> ?		
They will sail across the Pacific, won't they?		
1. You weren't on board yesterday,	?	
2. She had never taken soundings before,	?	
3. It isn't easy to be a good sailor,	?	
4. You can't go on board today,	_ ?	
5. You won't take my watch from me,	?	
6. You have sailed the Red Sea many times ,	?	
7. He had transmitted [the] signal by 05.00,	_?	
8. You have not taken bearings yet,	?	
9. Everything is okay on board,	_ ?	
(19.2) Write question tags.		
1. He repaired the engine,?		
2. You don't eat fish,?		
3. He understands the meaning of chivalry,?		
4. The vessel sailed into port last night,?		
5. You didn't obey the captain,?		
6. He will never make a good sailor,?		
(19.3) Write question tags.		
1. Everyone came for the drill,?		
2. Nobody appeared on the deck,?		
3. Well, I am the captain here,?		
4. Everybody is sleeping now,?		
5. Everything is in order now,?		

6. Nothing has been repaired yet, \_\_\_\_\_?





# Verb Forms: Gerunds & Infinitives; Like (like + infinitive, like + gerund, would like)

# ΓΕΡΟΥΝΔΙΑ ΚΑΙ ΑΠΑΡΕΜΦΑΤΑ.

#### 1. Εισαγωγή - Χοήση.

# GERUNDS & INFINITIVES

Gerund	Infinitive
Το γερούνδιο είναι ένας τύπος -ing του	Το απαρέμφατο είναι ο απλός τύπος του
ρήματος,	ρήματος + to (simple form + to)
e.g. sailing, mooring, docking, heaving, tal-	e.g. to sail, to moor, to dock, to heave, to
lying,	tally
και μπορεί να χρησιμοποιηθεί σαν	και μπορεί να χρησιμοποιηθεί σαν
υποκείμενο ή αντικείμενο:	αντικείμενο:
SUBJECT: Sailing is an expensive sport.	
OBJECT : I love sailing.	OBJECT: I love to sail.

# LIKE (love, hate, prefer) + to infinitive/ + ing

Με το σχήμα LIKE (love, hate, prefer) + to infinitive/ing

- 1. Μπορείτε να λέτε: Petros likes to work on small cargo ships. or Petros likes working on small cargo ships.
- 2. Αλλά πρέπει να χρησιμοποιείτε **like to do** όταν εννοείτε τι προτιμάτε να κάνετε, μολονότι όχι με μεγάλη ευχαρίστηση :
  - e.g. I like to check everything thoroughly before I take over my watch.
- And like doing όταν αναφέρεστε σε χόμπυ και άλλα προσωπικά ενδιαφέροντα:
   e.g. She likes sailing in summer and skiing in winter

#### WOULD LIKE (love, hate, prefer) + to infinitive/ + noun

To σχήμα WOULD LIKE (love, hate, prefer) + to infinitive/noun μπορεί να χρησιμοποιείται:

1. Για μια συγκεκριμένη περίπτωση: I wouldn't like to sail today, I'd like to lie on the beach.



Συγκρίνετε με : I like sailing, I always go sailing the weekends. (like = enjoy)
2. Για να ζητήσετε κάτι ευγενικά: Steward, I'd like a tuna sandwich, please. (I'd like = I want) Would you like to prepare it for me? (NOT do you like)
3. Για να προσφέρετε φαγητό ή ποτό: Would you like some coffee? Would like a tuna sandwich?
4. Για να προσκαλέσετε: Would you like to sail my Laser? Would like to go sailing with me?

#### Notes:

# **PRACTICE** (Unit 20).

#### 🗷 Exercises.

#### (20.1) Put in the right verb in Gerund form:

- a. train, lower, sail,
- 1. \_\_\_\_\_ the launch in such weather was a formidable task.
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_ a laser is great fun.
- 3. The cadets need to continue their \_\_\_\_\_\_ for another week.

#### b. complete, drift, tighten

- 4. When you can't turn the nut by hand any more, stop
- 5. [A] \_\_\_\_\_\_ oil slick was observed 1 mile off the ship to starboard.
- 6. After \_\_\_\_\_\_ the cargo work, the ship shifted from her berth.

#### (20.2) Put in the right verb in the *to-infinitive* form:

- a. alter, change, set
- 1. The Captain ordered him \_\_\_\_\_\_ from parallel to single operation.
- 2. After the warning by the lookout, the mate decided \_\_\_\_\_\_ course to port.
- 3. The pilot asked the bosun \_\_\_\_\_\_ the ladder 3 metres above water.

#### b. breathe, carry, operate

- 4. There's so much smoke, that it's difficult \_\_\_\_\_\_ in here.
- 5. Merchant ships can also \_\_\_\_\_\_ as tramps.
- 6. All liners could \_\_\_\_\_ passengers and/or cargo.

#### (20.3) Put in either an *infinitive* or a *gerund*:

- 1. I like (swim) \_\_\_\_\_\_ but I wouldn't like (swim) \_\_\_\_\_\_ today. It's rather cold for me.
- 2. He likes (steer) \_\_\_\_\_\_ his boat close to the shore. Isn't that rather dangerous? Yes, but he likes (live) \_\_\_\_\_\_ dangerously.



- 3. You shouldn't have done that. How would you like a much bigger ship (sail) \_\_\_\_\_\_ so near you?
- 4. He said that seamen have a wonderful, easy career, but I'd like (see) \_\_\_\_\_ him work on board for six months straight, and then I'd ask him how he'd like (continue) \_\_\_\_\_ for another six.
- 5. Specialised vessels are designed (carry) \_\_\_\_\_\_ a particular type of cargo.





Verb Forms Direct & Reported Speech: Simple statements, questions and commands: say, tell, ask.

# 1. Εισαγωγή.

- Χρησιμοποιούμε τον Πλάγιο (ή έμμεσο) λόγο για να αναφέρουμε τι είπε κάποιος.
- Στον πλάγιο λόγο δεν βάζουμε εισαγωγικά.

#### 2. Αλλαγή.

Οι αλλαγές από ευθύ σε πλάγιο λόγο εξαρτώνται από τις αλλαγές καταστάσεων. Οι αλλαγές αυτές αναφέρονται σε : person, place, time και verb και είναι βασικά ζήτημα κρίσεως (κοινής λογικής).

Person:	I; my	he, she; his, her
	we; our	they; their
Place:	here	there
	at this place	at that place
Time:	today/ this week	that day, that week
	yesterday/ last week	the previous day, the day before/ the week before
	tomorrow/ next week	the following day, the day after/ the week after
	ten minutes ago/ now	ten minutes before, ten minutes earlier/ then
	/_C	
ευθύ σε πλ	τύρια ρήματα αναφοράς από άγιο λόγο είναι: λέγω), <b>ask</b> (=ερωτώ)	"Come here," he <b>said</b> . He <b>told me</b> to go there at once. "Are you the Captain?" she <b>asked</b> .
αλλά υπάρχουν και τα ρήματα speak/ talk (=ομιλώ, συνομιλώ, κουβεντιάζω) που διαφέρουν στη χρήση		Captain Zeppos can <b>speak</b> two languages. You should not <b>speak to</b> him now; he <b>is talking to</b> his boss. Wait till he finishes. "What's the problem.?" "Sorry I don't want to <b>talk about</b> it." He <b>spoke</b> as early as one year old.



es sailing.
started sailing when he was six.
C
t he sails every weekend.
ne liked sailing.
liked sailing at the Academy.
1
State and the second
) she would sail at six.
) she would sail at six. were sailing the following day.
were sailing the following day.
were sailing the following day. I if he might sail then.
were sailing the following day. I if he might sail then. if I had been to the Caribbean.
were sailing the following day. I if he might sail then. if I had been to the Caribbean. e I was sailing to.
were sailing the following day. I if he might sail then. if I had been to the Caribbean. e I was sailing to.
were sailing the following day. I if he might sail then. if I had been to the Caribbean. e I was sailing to. I had done the day before.
were sailing the following day. I if he might sail then. if I had been to the Caribbean. e I was sailing to. I had done the day before.

#### **Notes:**



# PRACTICE (Unit 21).

#### *Exercises.*

(21.1) Put say, tell, ask, talk, speak: (remember: say to sb = tell sb)

1. "How many languages can you \_\_\_\_\_?" the master \_\_\_\_\_ the steward.



- 2. "The boat will enter port in exactly 20 min.," the steward \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the passenger.
- 3. "Please \_\_\_\_\_ me where the dining saloon is," \_\_\_\_\_ the passenger.
- 4. The steward \_\_\_\_\_\_ the young lady that lunch would be served at 01.00 hours.
- 5. The mother \_\_\_\_\_ the others not to \_\_\_\_\_ so loudly in the cabin.

#### (21.2) Put say, tell, ask, talk, speak: (remember: say to sb = tell sb)

- 1. The little passenger \_\_\_\_\_\_ that he had seen a whale that was 100 m long, but his father advised him not to \_\_\_\_\_\_ nonsense.
- 2. "I can't take double watch tonight," \_\_\_\_\_ the Third Mate. "I'm too tired."
- 3. "Come on, \_\_\_\_\_ to me," \_\_\_\_\_ the Master to the stowaway, "\_\_\_\_\_ me the whole truth, how did you get on board?"
- 4. "Can it be \_\_\_\_\_\_ that dolphins have a language?" "Not, really," the Master \_\_\_\_\_\_. "Whales have."
- 5. "What are you \_\_\_\_\_\_ about?" \_\_\_\_\_\_ the Mate. "I've never heard a whale \_\_\_\_\_."

#### (21.3) Turn the following sentences into Reported Speech:

- e.g. "Put helm hard to port!" said the Master to the helmsman. <u>The master told the helmsman to put helm hard to port.</u>
- 1. "The loading operation will finish dead on schedule," said the Second Mate.
- 2. "The ship is being launched," he said.
- 3. "The ship didn't vibrate, " he said.
- 4. "The new government has raised the value of the dollar," he said.
- 5. "The super tanker "TITAN" collided with an OBO while sailing near Chania," he said.
- 6. "Where is the logbook?" asked the Chief Engineer.
- 7. "What time is it?" the Captain asked the Steward.

#### (21.4) Turn the following sentences into Reported Speech:

- 1. "How long will it take you to repair the breakdown?" the Captain asked the engineers.
- 2. "Who are you?" the Captain asked the stowaway.



- 3. "What is wrong with pilot ladder?" the Captain asked the Bosun.
- 4. "Stand by pilot ladder!" ordered the Captain.
- 5. "Rig [the] pilot ladder 3 metres above [the] water!" said the Captain.
- 6. "Correct [the] list of [the] vessel!" said the Mate.
- 7. "Make lee on your starboard side!" said the Mate to the Bosun.
- 8. "Put [the] lights on at [the] pilot ladder!" said the Second Mate to the AB.





# **General Practice (16-21)**

#### *Æ* Exercises.

#### (22.1) Choose the right answer:

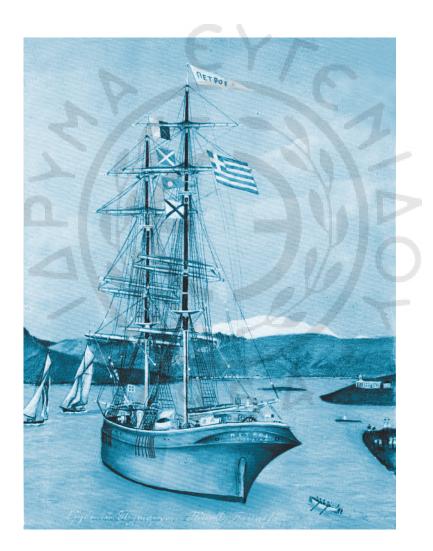
- 1. I'd love ..... a boat like yours. A. having B. to have C. have
- That suitcase is too heavy madam, let me ..... for you.
   A. carry B. to carry C. carrying
- The passenger looked at the steward without ...... anything.
   A. say B. to say C. saying
- 4. Would like ..... a drink, sir? A. to have B. have C. having
- 5. If you don't hurry, you ..... the last ship to Spetses. A. would miss B. will miss C. miss
- 6. The Captain .....a gold fountain pen on his birthday.A. was given B. would give C. will give
- 7. The ship owner ......about the loss of the ship, yet. A. have not told B. was telling C. has not been told
- 8. If you ..... the pump regularly, it wouldn't break down.
   A. service B. would service C. serviced
- 9. ..... overboard liferaft No. 3 and report
   A. Cover B. Throw C. Turn

#### (22.2) Choose the right answer:

- They entered the lifeboats, .....?
   A. did they B. don't they C. didn't they
- Hold on a moment, please, .....?
   A. will you B. can't I C. don't you
- 3. If they had the spare valve, they ..... the pump. A. could fix B. can fix C. will fix



- If you service an engine regularly, it never ...... down.
   A. broke B. will break C. breaks
- 5. A lot of boats ..... in this area, so don't leave it here.
- A. will steal B. are stolen C. will be stolen
- 6. ..... coast radio stations about [the] lifeboats launched.
- A. Speak B. Say C. Tell
- The Captain asked the Bosun why the pilot boat ..... rigged.
   A. isn't B. hasn't C. wasn't





Interrogatives: Question words (What, What + noun, Who, Where, When, .....)

#### ΕΡΩΤΗΜΑΤΙΚΕΣ ΛΕΞΕΙΣ.

Οι εφωτηματικές (αναφοφικές) αντωνυμίες είναι:

- α. Για πρόσωπα (who, whom, which (of), whose).
- β. Για πράγματα (what, which, whose).
- γ. Για τρόπο (how).
- δ. Για τόπο (where).
- ε. Για χρόνο (when).
- ζ. Για ποσότητες/αριθμό (how much / how many) κλπ.

Who is responsible for everything on board?	The Master is.	
Who(m) did you take over the watch from?*	The Third Officer.	
Whose luggage is that ?	It's mine.	
What type of vessel is that ?	It's a container ship.	
What is he?	He is an engineer.	
Which shipping company do you work for?*	Minoan Lines.	
Which of you is the Coxswain ?	Me.	
Where is the vessel sailing for?*	The Azores.	
When does your shift start ?	At 12.00 hours.	
Why did you call the Captain ?	Because he should be on the bridge right	
	now.	
How do you travel to your home town?	By sea.	
How many ships does OMEGA S.A. have ?	About a hundred, I think.	
* Ποραοχή: Τυχόν πορθέσεις συντάσσονται στο τέλος		

#### **Notes:**



# Practice (Unit 23).

#### 🗷 Exercises.

#### (23.1) Put in the correct question words in the blanks.

e.g.  $\underline{Who}$  is the officer of the watch? Captain Follas.

- 1. ..... is that guitar? The Chief Engineer's
- 2. ..... is the ship going to call next? At the port of Hydra.
- 3. ..... drills have the men had? Three, I think.
- 4. ..... did you call the Chief Engineer? Because we are losing speed.
- 5. ..... is he? A greaser on a cargo vessel.
- 6. ..... did you travel home? By aeroplane.
- 7. ..... of you is the first mate? Me, sir!

#### (23.2) Start questions with the words in brackets.

#### Example:

I expect to refloat tomorrow at 17.00 (When) When do you expect to refloat?

- 1. I require tug-boat assistance (What kind)
- 2. She must beach in position (Where)
- 3. I have a very heavy list to starboard (How heavy)
- 4. I can jettison bunkers (What)
- 5. I have launched four life boats (How many)
- 6. We have winds from the north (Which direction)
- 7. I sent a Mayday because I had a heavy list. (Why)

#### (23.3) Ask questions to match the answers:

#### Example:

The boat has a length of 4 metres. <u>How long is the boat?</u>

1. The superstructure has a height of 11 metres.



- 2. The vessel has a width (beam) of 25 metres.
- 3. The harbour has a depth of 10 metres.
- 4. The plate has a thickness of 3 cm.
- 5. The master is on the bridge.
- 6. The Chief Engineer wants the greaser to do overtime.

#### (23.4) Ask questions to match the answers:

- 1. I am Second Mate on a passenger liner.
- 2. The Master wants the blue one.
- 3. I see Mary on the promenade deck.
- 4. They always go on holiday in August.
- 5. M/V «ALEXANDER» has [a] leak below [the] water line.
- 6. M/V «Birgit» requires [an] escort.
- 7. I'm the First Mate on this container ship.





Nouns: Singular/Plural Regular/Irregular Forms, Compound Nouns

# Α. ΠΛΗΘΥΝΤΙΚΟΣ ΟΥΣΙΑΣΤΙΚΩΝ.

#### Σχηματισμός.

Κατάληξη	Προσθήκη	Παράδειγμα
Για: • όλες τις καταλήξεις • εκτός: s, x, sh, ch	-s -cs	mate-s, vessel-s, dock-s, container-s, tug-s compass-es, mesh-es, hatch-es, gas-es
•σύμφωνο +y	-ies	body-bodies, sky-skies, (but: buoy-buoys)
<ul> <li>-ο μερικά:</li> </ul>	-s -cs	photo-s, studio-s, zoo-s, kilo-s potato-es, hero-es, cargo-es
<ul> <li>-f μερικά:</li> <li>μερικά:</li> </ul>	-vcs -fs	half-hal <b>ves</b> , life- lives, roof- <b>s</b> , chief-s
<ul> <li>άλλες καταλήξεις:</li> <li>-x (Latin):</li> <li>-sis (Greek):</li> </ul>	-ces -ses	crucifi <b>x</b> -crucifi <b>ces</b> ( <i>or</i> - <i>xes</i> ) hypothes <b>is</b> -hypothes <b>es</b>

# Β. ΑΝΩΜΑΛΟΙ ΠΛΗΘΥΝΤΙΚΟΙ.

man-men, woman-women, postman-postmen etc. child-children, ox-oxen, mouse-mice, louse-lice, foot-feet, goose-geese, tooth-teeth.

# Γ. ΣΥΝΘΕΤΑ ΟΥΣΙΑΣΤΙΚΑ.

Πολλές φορές συνδυάζουμε δύο ουσιαστικά για να κάνουμε μια σύνθετη λέξη. Αυτό μπορεί να γίνει με τρεις τρόπους:

 $\alpha$ ) sea + urchin = a sea urchin

- $\beta$ ) sea + way = a seaway
- $\gamma$ ) Ice + cream = an ice-cream



# Παρατήρηση:

Ωστόσο πρέπει να τονιστεί, ότι η ζωντανή εξέλιξη της γλώσσας δεν έχει αχόμη τυποποιήσει το θέμα αυτό με αποτέλεσμα να παρουσιάζονται αρχετές ασυνέπειες στην τήρηση της χρήσεως του ενωτιχού ή της ενσωματώσεως (seafront και sea front).

# Δ. ΟΥΣΙΑΣΤΙΚΑ ΧΩΡΙΣ ΠΛΗΘΥΝΤΙΚΟ ΚΑΙ ΕΙΔΙΚΕΣ ΠΕΡΙΠΤΩΣΕΙΣ.

<ul> <li>(animals) deer, fish, sheep,</li> <li>(Ζώα) Τα ουσιαστικά αυτής της κατηγορίας νοούνται στον ενικό και στον πληθυντικό.</li> </ul>	Mount Parnitha used to have <b>a lot of deer</b> . The Adriatic has <b>many kinds of fishes</b> .
<ul> <li>(work-works)</li> <li>(Ενικού και Πληθυντικού)</li> <li>Τα ουσιαστικά αυτής της κατηγορίας είναι ενικού αριθμού που έχουν πληθυντικό συνήθως με διαφορετική σημασία.</li> </ul>	The Mate always has <b>a lot of work</b> to do. The Captain has collected <b>a lot of works of</b> <b>art</b> in his twenty years of service My uncle is employed in the <b>steelworks</b> down near the harbour.
<ul> <li>(singular with -s) means, news, series, species.</li> <li>(Ενικού που λήγουν σε -s) Τα ουσιαστικά αυτής της κατηγορίας λήγουν σε -s αλλά είναι ενικού αριθμού:</li> <li>(taken as a whole) furniture, luggage, cutlery, etc.</li> <li>(Περιληπτικά) Τα ουσιαστικά αυτής της κατηγορίας νοούνται σαν ενιαίο σύνολο.</li> </ul>	The <b>news is</b> good. The aeroplane <b>is</b> a safe <b>means</b> of transportation. After the terrible flood destroyed everything we had to buy new <b>furniture</b> .
• (abstract) information, money, accommodation, machinery, etc.	Can I have some <b>information</b> please?



 (Αφηφημένα) Τα ουσιαστικά αυτής της κατηγορίας δεν έχουν κατά κανόνα πληθυντικό, αλλά όταν έχουν, έχει διαφορετική σημασία.

• (materials) iron, water, coffee, bread, glass.

 (Υλικά) Τα ουσιαστικά αυτής της κατηγορίας δεν έχουν κατά κανόνα πληθυντικό, αλλά όταν έχουν έχει διαφορετική σημασία. I'd like some **coffee**, please. Modern buildings are made of **glass** and steel. I'd like a **glass** of water, please. I hardly recognised him; he was wearing dark

glasses and bowler hat.

#### Notes:

	 	-

# Practice (Unit 24).

#### 🗷 Exercises.

#### (24.1) Give the plural of the following (use: -s -es, -ies, -ves, -ces)

crew	 cliff	ferry	appendix
rope	 cargo	wharf	capacity
deck	 thief	index	wheel house
ship	 bay	launch	parenthesis
knife	 chief	compass	ocean liner
quay	 buoy	belief	life boat

#### (24.2) Give the Irregular Plurals:

1.	child	 6. postman	
2.	woman	 7. goose	
3.	mouse	 8. tooth	
4.	foot	 9. ox	
5.	louse	 10. pumpman	

(24.3) Join the right words to make a compound word:

	(A)	one	word	(e.g.	<u>starlight</u> )
--	-----	-----	------	-------	--------------------



1.	cam	weight
2.	tug	board
3.	light	front
4.	sea	house
5.	break	boat
6.	ice	down
7.	break	shaft
8.	star	breaker
9.	fly	water

# (B) two words (e.g. <u>star sign</u>)

1. vacuum	ton	
2. ferry	boat	
3. deep	book	
4. super	valve	
5. steam	tank	
6. dry	dock	
7. log	turbine	
8. metric	tanker	
9. discharge	tube	

# (C) two words joined by hyphen (e.g. <u>star-fish</u>).

1.	ice	ine	
2.	sky	turbine	
3.	expansion	ship	
4.	cargo	compressor	
5.	motor	device	
6.	steam	piece	
7.	work	skate	
8.	steerage	section	
9.	cross	way	

# (24.4) Join the words in the right way to make a compound noun.

# (e.g. <u>starlight, star sign, star-fish</u>).

1. water	owner	
2. anchor	tube	
3. salt	man	
4. life	tank	
5. sea	water	
6. drain	man	
7. ship	shaft	
8. sea	jacket	
9. crank	farer	



# Nouns: Countable/ Uncountable Nouns, Abstract Nouns

# ΟΥΣΙΑΣΤΙΚΑ.

#### Διαχρίσεις:

- α. Αριθμήσιμα (friend, table, cadet, vessel, boat, spanner, tool)
- β. Μη αριθμήσιμα (navigation, information, coffee, milk, love, equipment)
- γ. Αριθμήσιμα και μη αριθμήσιμα (iron, glass, time)
- δ. Αφηρημένα (irritation, shipping, knowledge)

COUNTABLE NOUNS (Αριθμήσιμα) •Τα ουσιαστικά αυτά έχουν ενικό και πλη- θυντικό αριθμό. · •Χρησιμοποιούμε a και an με αυτά. •Το ρήμα μπορεί να είναι είτε στον ενικό είτε στον πληθυντικό.	Container ships are expensive to make. Do you have a house in the country ? She is an intelligent girl.
UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS (Μη αφιθμήσιμα) •Τα ουσιαστικά αυτά έχουν μόνο ενικό •Δεν χρησιμοποιούμε a και an με αυτά. •Το φήμα μποφεί να είναι μόνο στον ενικό.	The passengers' luggage <i>is</i> all in that room. The master likes popular music very much. All this machinery <i>is</i> useless.
NOUNS THAT ARE BOTH COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE (Άλλοτε αφιθμήσιμα και άλλοτε μη αφιθμήσιμα)	
<ul> <li>Μη αριθμήσιμα (γενικής σημασίας).</li> <li>Αριθμήσιμα (ειδικής σημασίας)</li> </ul>	Glass is a brittle material. He is wearing dark glasses

NOUNS



ABSTRA	CT NC	UNS Aq	ιθμήσιμα		BEHAVE LI	ŀ
	,					

 Συμπεριφέρονται όπως τα μη αριθμήσιμα beauty, courage, education, freedom, advice, information, evidence, proof, work. BEHAVE LIKE THE UNCOUNTABLES

It was a yacht of great <u>beauty</u>. He gave me some sound <u>advice</u>. He never has time.

# PRACTICE (Unit 25).

# 🗷 Exercises.

# (25.1) Put in the verbs and nouns in the right number (singular/plural).

If necessary use your dictionary. The first one has been done for you:

- 1. Mary has blue eyes and beautiful blonde (hair) <u>hair</u>.
- 2. It takes a lot of (machinery) ..... to operate a vessel.
- 3. There (be) ..... a lot of auxiliary (machine) ..... on board.
- 4. As there (be) ..... very little (fuel) ..... left, they set course for the nearest port.
- 5. The Captain enjoys listening to (music) ...... He bought a lot of (CD) ...... at the last port of call.
- 6. The Chief Engineer told the Third Engineer to do a lot of (job) ..... around the engine room, because he had a lot of paper (work) ...... to do.

# (25.2) Put a/an where possible or choose the correct word/phrase in brackets:

- 1. There was such ..... terrible weather that passenger liners were not allowed to sail.
- 2. ..... nautical education in important in Greece.
- 3. The Captain told the Cadet that he could have ..... very good education in the Southampton Marine Academy.
- 4. The Chief Engineer had a lot of unusual (experience/experiences) on that very old cargo liner.
- 5. Do not allow the Mate to navigate in this channel. He hasn't got enough (experience/experiences).
- 6. The Bosun has a lot of (knowledge/knowledges) of life-saving (equipment/equipments).
- 7. The Captain wished the cadet ...... good luck.
- 8. In Greece we experienced ...... hospitality that we had never come across before.
- 9. It took only a little (time/times) to fix the pump. He had done it many (time/times) before.
- 10. The Second Engineer has a beautiful aquarium with seven (fish/fishes) in his cabin.
- 11. Today's menu is (fish/fishes) for dinner.
- 12. Mt Parnitha used to have plenty of (deer/deers).

# (25.3) Write sentences of your own with the following nouns. Use them in the plural (-s, es) wherever possible.

garbage, hardware, luggage, baggage, river, lake, sea, thunder, screw, water, information, trip, traffic



# (a) Uncountable.

1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	

# (b) Countable.

1.	
2.	
3.	
5.	





# **Possessives (Genitive with of/apostrophe)**

# **Genitives : (of), ('s), ('), (s').**

# **Α.** Γενική Κτητική (SAXON GENITIVE ('), ('s), (s').

Τη χρησιμοποιούμε χυρίως με έμψυχα (ανθρώπους και ζώα)

-

• Για ουσιαστικό ενικού προσθέστε απόστροφο και <b>-s</b> .	The Captain's cabin. The dog's kennel
<ul> <li>Αν το ουσιαστικό λήγει σε -s, δε χρειάζεται να προσθέσετε -s, αλλά μπορείτε.</li> </ul>	Charles' friends or Charles's friends.
• Για ουσιαστικά πληθυντικού που λήγουν σε <b>-s</b> προσθέστε μόνο απόστροφο:	The sailors' quarters.
<ul> <li>Αν το ουσιαστικό δεν λήγει σε -s, προσθέστε</li> <li>απόστροφο και -s.</li> </ul>	The seamen's families.
<ul> <li>Αν έχουμε δύο ουσιαστικά που έχουν σχέση μεταξύ τους προσθέστε μία απόστροφο (') μόνο, στο δεύτερο.</li> </ul>	Mary and John's father is a Captain.
<ul> <li>Αν τα δύο ουσιαστικά δεν έχουν σχέση μεταξύ</li> <li>τους προσθέστε δύο αποστρόφους.</li> </ul>	These clothes are <b>Jean's</b> and <b>Lilian's</b> .

# **Β.** Για πράγματα, τόπους, κλπ. χρησιμοποιούμε γενική με OF/OF THE:

- Look at the bow of that ship. It's beautiful.
- At the beginning of the voyage the weather was wonderful.
- Alexandria is the most beautiful city of Egypt.



# Notes:

father.

# Practice Unit (26).

# 🗷 Exercises.

(26.1) Put in the correct possessive: ('), ('s), (s'). The first one has been done for you.

#### Example:

This uniform isn't the (Captain) <u>Captain's</u>, It's the (Chief Mate) <u>Chief Mate's</u>.

- 1. These cabins are not the (crew) \_\_\_\_\_\_. They are the (passengers) \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. The boat is that (man) \_\_\_\_\_\_ over there.
- 3. The scooter is not the (children) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. The Captain ordered the (ship) \_\_\_\_\_ Boatswain to prepare a fire drill.
- 5. Where did you find this? At the (Chemist)
- 6. This boat does not belong to the Nortons, it's the (Smiths)
- 7. The Captain is (Mary and John)
- 8. Those bags must be (John and Nick) \_
- 9. These cabins are the (men) \_\_\_\_\_ quarters.

#### (26.2) Write sentences about these people:

# Example:

(Lillian/ Chief Engineer/ wife) Lillian is the Chief Engineer's wife.
1. (this cabin/ Captain/ quarters)
2. (Mary/ Mate/ daughter)
3. (Anthony/ Bosun/ son)
4. (Julia/ Electrician/ fiancee)

#### (26.3) Correct the sentences where necessary:

#### **Examples:**

For the Mate the watch is the best part of his job.	OK
The AB slept in the cabin of the Bosun last night.	in the Bosun's cabin
1. The job of the pilot is very important.	
2. The engines of the tug boat are powerful.	
3. He signed at the bottom of the page.	
4. This is the favourite dish of the Cook.	
5. This is the job of the Oiler.	



Pronouns: Personal (Subject/Object), Possessive, Reflexive

# **ΠΡΟΣΩΠΙΚΕΣ** ΑΝΤΩΝΥΜΙΕΣ

• Οι αντωνυμίες αναφέρονται σε ουσιαστικά. Αυτά τα ουσιαστικά ονομάζονται ηγούμενα (antecedents.

# Κλίση - Χϱήση.

	Pronouns	Examples
SUBJECT PRONOUNS	I	
Οι προσωπικές αντωνυμίες	you	The ship sailed. It/She was a tanker.
στην <b>ονομαστική</b>	he, she, it	(Το "It/She" αναφέρεται στο "ship")
χρησιμοποιούνται σαν	we	The mate said, "I think, I saw a
υποκείμενα.	you	liferaft."
	they	(Το "I" αναφέρεται στο "mate").
OBJECT PRONOUNS	me	
Οι προσωπικές αντωνυμίες	you	The MINERVA MARITIME bought the
στην <b>αιτιατική</b>	him, her, it	ship.
χρησιμοποιούνται σαν	us	They bought <b>it</b> .
αντικείμενα.	you C	(Το "It" αναφέρεται στο "ship")
	them 🕘 🔵	
• POSSESSIVE	mine	
PRONOUNS	yours	
-Οι κτητικές αντωνυμίες	his, hers *	
αναφέρονται στον κτήτορα	ours	This car's <b>mine</b> and that's <b>yours.</b>
και δεν ακολουθούνται από	yours	
το αντικείμενο (κτήμα)	theirs	
Σύγκρινε παρακάτω με τα		
κτητικά επίθετα (Possessive	*Δεν υπάρχει its	
Adjectives):		



• REFLEXIVE		
PRONOUNS		Examples:
<ul> <li>Οι αυτοπαθείs</li> </ul>	myself	
αντωνυμίες μπορούν να	yourself	I cut myself.
επηρεάζουν το υποκείμενο	himself	(i.e. I was cut by me!)
ή να δίνουν απλά έμφαση	ourselves	John scrubbed the deck himself.
ότι το υποκείμενο έκανε την	yourselves	(i.e. <b>alone</b> without any help)
ενέργεια μόνο.	themselves	
	herself	
	Itself	
	C	
• POSSESSIVE		Examples:
ADJECTIVES Ta китика	my	Give the cat its food every morning and
επίθετα δε	your	evening.
χρησιμοποιούνται ποτέ	his/her	That is <b>your</b> luggage over there.
μόνα τους. Ακολουθούνται	its	I think this is <b>their</b> yacht over here next
πάντα από ουσιαστικό	our	to the "RENA II".
(αντικείμενο).	your	This is <b>my</b> suitcase and that is <b>your</b>
	their	hand bag.
	4	
• DOUBLE	Τότε μπορούμε να	$\Delta$ εν μπορούμε να πούμε: a my boat.
POSSESSIVES	χρησιμοποιήσουμε	Λέμε:
Προκύπτουν από την	μόνο τιs	a boat <b>of <i>mine</i></b> , that boat <b>of <i>his</i></b> .
ανάγκη να βάλουμε άρθρο	αντωνυμίες με	He listened to every word <b>of hers</b> .
ή δεικτικό μπροστά από	of+possessive	He is a friend <b>of mine</b> .
κτητικό ?	$\Rightarrow$	He is friend <b>of the Minister's</b> .
		Επίσης είναι δυνατό:
		He's a friend <b>of the Minister</b> .

#### Notes:

# Practice Unit (27)

### 🗷 Exercises.

#### (27.1) Replace the underlined with a personal pronoun.

*Example:* <u>The Chief Mate</u> is writing a letter to his <u>mother</u>. <u>He</u> is writing a letter to <u>her</u>.

1. The Captain and the First Mate entered the bridge

2. Mrs Smith told the stewardess to bring some lemonade.

3. The Mate and I went on deck to find Mr Smith.

4. The passengers asked the pilot and me to watch the rescue operation.

5. The Boatswain asked the ABs to hurry up with the work.

(27.2) Put in the correct possessive adjective (my, your...):

#### Example:

"I'd like some ice in  $\underline{my}$  whiskey," said the Chief Engineer.

- 1. "We'd like breakfast in \_\_\_\_\_ cabin," said the passenger.
- 2. "Would you like wine with \_\_\_\_\_ meal?" asked the Steward.
- 3. The Second Engineer likes bacon with \_\_\_\_\_ eggs.
- 4. The stewardess 'd like lemon in \_\_\_\_\_ tea.
- 5. The children would like a TV in \_\_\_\_\_ cabin.
- (27.3) Complete the sentences of the dialogue. Use pronouns (I, me, you etc.) and short answers (e.g. Yes, I have/No, I haven't).

#### Example:

A: Do you know the Captain and the Chief Engineer of the S/S "BIRGIT"

B: Yes,  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  do. I met <u>them</u> at the Consul's party yesterday.

- 2. C: Is the new scotch boiler expensive?
  - E: No, ..... is rather cheap.
- 4. C: Do you think I can learn French in 10 months?

E: Yes, ..... can learn a lot if ..... study every day.



5. C: Has Captain Fokas found a ship?

#### (27.4) Put the pronouns in parenthesis in the possessive form (mine, etc.):

- 1. This sextant is not (you) \_\_\_\_\_, it's ( I ) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. This is (he) \_\_\_\_\_ bathing suit and that is (she) \_\_\_\_\_ over there
- 3. Those suitcases belong to the Japanese passengers; they are (they) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. No sir, these hand bags are not (you) \_\_\_\_\_, they are (we) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. This house is Mary's. (we) \_\_\_\_\_ is farther up the hill.
- 6. The ship is leaving (it) \_\_\_\_\_ berth now.
- 7. Surprise ! A friend of (you) \_\_\_\_\_\_ is coming on board at the next port of call.

#### (27.5) Fill in the blanks with a suitable reflexive pronoun (myself, etc):

- 1. After the collision the boat \_\_\_\_\_\_ was OK. But some of the passengers were injured.
- 2. The situation was so serious, that the Captain \_\_\_\_\_ made the announcement.
- 3. The maiden voyage was formal, so the wives of the officers \_\_\_\_\_\_ were also invited.
- 4. Be careful with that rope! You may cut \_\_\_\_\_ badly with that rope.
- 5. They knew that once they were on the island they were on their own. They would just have
- 6. to take care of \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. Good-bye, my dear ! Enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ on that wonderful cruise.
- 8. She hurt \_\_\_\_\_\_ while coming up the gangway.





Pronouns: Impersonal It, There; Demonstratives: this, that, these, those

# ΑΠΡΟΣΩΠΟ IT/ THERE.

# 1. Χϱήση ΙΤ.

ήση IT.		
Χρησιμοποιούμε το -it	examples	
• Για να αναφερθούμε σε ένα πράγμα, μια πράξη, μια κατάσταση ή μια ιδέα.	This Decca navigator works perfectly. Is <b>it</b> expensive? Sailing is an expensive hobby, isn't <b>it</b> ? And you must scrub the deck all by yourself. <b>It</b> sure is unfair. Sell the house and live on a yacht. I thinks <b>it</b> 's a great idea.	
<ul> <li>Για να αναφερθούμε σε ένα άγνωστο πρόσωπο.</li> </ul>	Did someone knock? Yes, <b>it</b> must be the steward.	
• Για να αναφερθούμε στην ώρα, την ημέρα, τον καιρό, και την απόσταση.	<ul> <li>What time is it? It's half past twelve (12.30).</li> <li>What day is it? It's Sunday. It's 22 June. It's my birthday.</li> <li>It is cold/ hot/ cool/ warm/ windy/ raining/ snowing/drizzling.</li> <li>How far is Sounion from Piraeus. It's about 60 miles.</li> </ul>	
• Σε περιόδους που περιέχουν αναφορικές προτάσεις (that-clause) ή ένα απαρέμφατο (infinitive).	It is true <b>that</b> too large a tanker is not profitable any more. It would be a good idea <b>to book</b> your passage in advance in summer.	



# 2. Χοήση THERE.

examples
I must go to Syros. <b>There's</b> a flying dolphin sailing at 06.30.
<b>There are</b> as many as ten navigating officers on large liners.
There were a lot of passengers on the promenade deck.
There have been too many changes made on that bulk
carrier. (too many=more than acceptable)

#### 3. Να χρησιμοποιήσω it ή there ?

• Συχνά είναι δύσκολο να διαλέξουμε μεταξύ it και there.

There is a cargo ship in the harbour. It is a large container ship.

• Χρησιμοποιήσαμε το - *there* για να αναφερθούμε στο πλοίο για πρώτη φορά και το - it για να δώσουμε λεπτομέρειες. Ή αλλιώς με το there είπαμε τι υπάρχει και με το it τι είναι.

# ΔΕΙΚΤΙΚΕΣ ΑΝΤΩΝΥΜΙΕΣ (Demonstratives).

#### 1. Εισαγωγή - Κλίση.

singular	plural	examples
	. n	
this	these	<ul> <li>Όταν ο ομιλητής δείχνει κάτι κοντά του.</li> </ul>
		This (here) is a beautiful yacht.
that	those	This is my car. Please, get in.
		• Όταν ο ομιλπτής δείχνει κάτι μακριά του.
		Take <b>these</b> deck chairs up to the awning deck.
		Check the ticket of <b>that</b> passenger over.
		Entry to <b>those</b> spaces ( <b>there</b> ) is forbidden.

#### **2.** Χϱήση.

Οι Δεικτικές αντωνυμίες (Demonstratives) χρησιμοποιούνται για ανθρώπους, τόπους, καταστάσεις και χρόνο:

People:	
<ul> <li>Το this παρουσιάζει ανθρώπουs</li> <li>και το that δίνει την ταυτότητα ανθρώπων.</li> </ul>	Captain, <b>this</b> is Mario Hadzis, our new Third Engineer. <b>That</b> is the Chinese pilot over there.
<ul> <li>Στο πλέφωνο ή στα μεγάφωνα ή πίσω από μια πόρτα:</li> <li>Το this λεει ποιοι είμαστε, τα this/that ρωτούν ποιος είναι.</li> </ul>	Attention, attention! <b>This</b> is your Captain speaking. Hello? Who's <b>this/that</b> , please?



Places and situations:	The view of the island is wonderful from this deck,
• Όταν βρισκόμαστε σε ένα <b>μέροs ή</b>	isn't it?
<b>μια κατάσταση</b> , χρησιμοποιούμετο	This reception is too noisy. Shall we go out and
this για να το εκφράσουμε.	enjoy the sunset from the railings?
Time:	
• Χρησιμοποιούμε τα this/these όταν	I am sailing as a Cadet Engineer <b>this</b> summer.
βρισκόμαστε κοντά <b>στη στιγμή ή</b>	Few students sign on as seafarers these days.
<b>στο γενικότερο χρόνο</b> που μιλάμε ή	Do you remember <b>that</b> trip round Cape Horn? Oh
αναφερόμαστε, και τα that/those όταν	yes, <b>those</b> were the days!
βρισκόμαστε μακριά.	EYR
• Χρησιμοποιούμε το that για κάτι	
που μόλις συνέβη και το this για κάτι	What was <b>that</b> noise? It must have been a tug
που πρόκεπαι να συμβεί ή να λεχθεί.	passed.
	I hate to tell you this, but that was really a stupid
	thing to do.

#### **Notes:**



# Practice (Unit 28).

#### 🗷 Exercises.

(28.1) Put in: *it, there, they* in the blanks.

#### Example:

<u>There</u> is no hope to rescue more persons.

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_ rains a lot in winter.
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_ is still one lifeboat with survivors.
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_ are no more liferafts in distress position.
- 4. What time is \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6. Will \_\_\_\_\_ be a lot of ships in the harbour ?
- 5. The crew were very helpful. \_\_\_\_\_\_ always responded immediately.
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_ is no immediate danger to our passengers.
- 7. How much time is \_\_\_\_\_ left ? \_\_\_\_\_ can't be much. \_\_\_\_\_ are coming any minute now.
- 8. Tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_\_ will be cold. \_\_\_\_\_\_ will be some snow during the night.



9. At last I hope \_\_\_\_\_ will not be foggy.

#### (28.2) Use this, that, these, those, in the blanks:

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_ are our seats here and \_\_\_\_\_ are yours over there.
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_ island in the foreground is Aegina and \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the background are Hydra and Spetses.
- 3. Do you remember what happened on \_\_\_\_\_ day on the T/S 'Petros the Great"?
- 4. Oh yes, I haven't forgotten to \_\_\_\_\_ day.
- 5. "I like reading stories about pirates and great explorers." "So do I \_\_\_\_\_\_ were the days, as the song goes."

#### (28.3) Ask questions as in the examples considering the answers:

#### Examples:

(furnace/boiler)

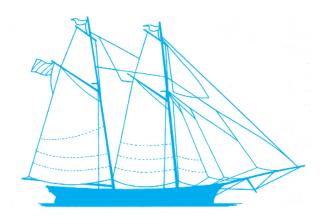
Js there a furnace in a boiler? Yes, there is.

(steering wheels/cargo ship)

How many steering wheels are there on a cargo ship? Just one.

- 1. (water drums / water-tube boiler) .....? Usually three.
- 2. (steam drum / water-tube boiler) .....? Yes, there is.
- 3. (Coast Guard station / this fishing village) .....? No, there isn't.
- 4. (impeller / centrifugal pump) .....? Yes, there is.
- 5. (gear-wheels / gear wheel pump)
- .....? Yes, there are.
- 6. (smoke box/Scotch boiler).

.....? Just one.





# **General Practice (23-28)**

#### (29.1) Choose the right answer:

- 1. ..... was the vessel painted? Last month. A. Where B When C. What.
- 2. ..... jacket is that. The helmsman's.
   A. Whose B. Whom C. Who.
- ..... spare valve have we got . Just three.
   A. How many B. When C. How heavy.
- 4. Where is the Steward? I think I saw ..... in the bar. A. she B. him C. he.
- 5. Who are these ABs? ..... are the fire team. A. They B. You C. We.
- 6. Who's that beautiful passenger? That's Elektra; ..... is Greek.A. She B. Them C. Her.
- Our .....name is Marsha. She's a cocker spaniel.
   A. dog's B. dogs' C. of the dog's.
- This is ...... dog. The sisters love him very much.
   A. Helen and Krystia's B. Helen's and Krystia's C Helen's and Krystia.
- Is there ..... food in the lifeboat? Yes, plenty of cans and a bag of rusks.
   A. some B. no C. any.

#### (29.2) Choose the right answer:

- This is the Bosun and that is ..... daughter.
   A. his B. her C. of his.
- 3. It was their fault. They caused the damage ...... A. ourselves B. yourselves C. themselves.



- 4. Is this bag the Stewardess's? No, this is mine and that is ...... A. her B. hers C. ours.
- 5. ..... berth here is for the M/V "*Jackie*", and that one over there for the S/S "Ionia". A. This B. That C. These.
- 6. ..... rains a lot in winter in Glasgow.
   A. There B. It C. This.





Determiners: Article a/an + Countable, Article the + Countable/Uncountable, No Article

### AP@PA.

### 1. Εισαγωγή - Παρουσίαση βασικής χρήσης.

Το αόριστο άρθρο έχει δύο τύπους: a και an

- To an μπαίνει μπροστά από ουσιαστικά που αρχίζουν με ήχο φωνέντος: an oar, an apprentice, an ensign, an hour, an island
- To a μπαίνει μπροστά από ουσιαστικά που αρχίζουν με ήχο συμφώνου: a boat, a car, a door, a sail, a ship, a vessel, a window, a yard

### 2. Το Αόριστο άρθρο a/an (Indefinite Article).

Χρησιμοποιούμε:		
• a/an + singular count noun		
• no article + plural count	• Για να κάνουμε	A cargo ship is expensive.
noun	γενικεύσεις	Cargo ships are expensive.
• no article + uncountable		Bad weather is dangerous at sea.
noun		6/ 5

### 3. Το επίθετο some και το άρθρο a/an.

Χρησιμοποιούμε:	Για να αναφερθούμε σε:	
• a/an + singular count noun	• σε ένα αντικείμενο,	I saw a tanker outside the port.
• some + plural countable	• σε περισσότερα	I saw some ships at pier 5.
nouns	αντικείμενα.	Some luggage was still on board.
• some + uncountable noun	• σε μικρή ποσότητα.	

### 4. Το οριστικό άρθρο the (Definite Article).

Χρησιμοποιούμε:		
• the + singular count noun	• Για να αναφερθούμε σε	The vessel is in the harbour.
• the + plural count noun	συγκεκριμένα αντικείμενα.	I saw the ships in the port.
• the + uncountable noun		The luggage has been unloaded.



### 5. Γενική χρήση των άρθρων.

Χρησιμοποιείστε το <b>the</b> όταν αναφέρεστε σε	Take this message to <b>the</b> Master.		
συγκεκριμένο ή συγκεκριμένα πράγματα ή	You can't see <b>the</b> moon tonight. It's cloudy.		
πρόσωπα που εσείs και οι συνομιλιτέs σαs	The Steward is in <b>the</b> galley.		
γνωρίζουν.	Close <b>the</b> hatches!		
	<b>The</b> <i>M</i> / <i>V</i> " <i>Jacky</i> " is docking now.		
Χρησιμοποιείστε το άρθρο <b>the</b> όταν	A large tanker dropped anchor outside the port.		
αναφέρεστε σε πρόσωπο (-α) ή πράγμα (-τα)	A launch was sent to the tanker. The launch		
για δεύτερη φορά.	carried the Port Captain and the Chief Engineer		
	of <b>the</b> Company.		
Mn χρησιμοποιείτε άρθρο (No article)	Ferry-boats are my favourite vessels, but I like		
με αριθμήσιμα στον πληθυντικό ή μη	yachts very much, too.		
αριθμήσιμα όταν μιλάτε γενικά.	Cargo is loaded on board in various ways.		
	Safety of cargo and passengers is the main		
	responsibility of the Master.		
Mn χρησιμοποιείτε άρθρο (No article)			
μπροστά σε κύρια ονόματα όπωs: George,	John is an electrician.		
Mary, Athens, Paris;	He lives in <b>London</b> .		
Πάντοτε να χρησιμοποιείτε άρθρο (a/an,	He sails <b>a</b> Laser.		
the) μπροστά από ένα αριθμήσιμο	I sailed <b>the</b> Fin.		
ουσιαστικό στον ενικό.	I have <b>a</b> beautiful cris-craft(=speedboat).		
	3		
Επίσης μπορείτε να βάζετε μια κτητική	I let him sail <b>my</b> Dragon.		
(possessive) ή μια δεικακή	I don't like <b>this</b> boat; I'll have <b>that</b> one over		
(demonstrative) αντωνυμία.	there.		

### Notes:



### PRACTICE (Unit 30).

### 🗷 Exercises.

### (30.1) Put in *a* or *an*:

- 1. The Amazon is \_\_\_\_\_ river.
- 2. The Captain is \_\_\_\_\_ honest man.
- 3. Jupiter is \_\_\_\_\_ very big planet.
- 4. The S/S "Kendavros" is \_\_\_\_\_ old ship.
- 5. The deckhands will finish the job in \_\_\_\_\_ hour.
- 6. Tennis is \_\_\_\_\_ very boring game.
- 7. As soon as they went ashore they looked for \_\_\_\_\_ hotel.
- 8. «Lord Jim» is \_\_\_\_\_ interesting book.
- 9. \_\_\_\_\_ window opened and \_\_\_\_\_ man looked at me.

1. The Mate wants to ask you		English
2. John, the greaser, can't sail		yard
3. The passenger is reading	а	question
4. Michael never wears	an	spanner
5. The company bought	(-)	overalls
6. The hotel had	_	old ship
7. The Captain must learn better		boat
8. He asked for		interesting magazine

(30.2) Write sentences as in the example. Use a, an where necessary:

### Example:

The mate wants to ask you a question.

1.	
2.	<u> </u>
	33
5.	
6.	
7	
· •	

### (30.3) Put in the correct article (a, an, the) where necessary :

- 1. We need \_\_\_\_\_ extra lookout during \_\_\_\_\_ channel crossing.
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_log (or \_\_\_\_\_log-book) is \_\_\_\_\_\_book in which \_\_\_\_\_\_deck officer of \_\_\_\_\_\_watch records \_\_\_\_\_\_events that take place during his term of duty, e.g. \_\_\_\_\_\_speed of \_\_\_\_\_\_vessel, her position, \_\_\_\_\_\_weather and other events connected with \_\_\_\_\_\_sailing of \_\_\_\_\_\_vessel.



3. <u>log is</u> apparatus for measuring <u>speed of</u> ship, but it is also <u>piece of</u> treetrunk which we usually burn in <u>fire place to keep</u> house warm.

### (30.4) Put in the correct article where necessary:

\_\_\_\_\_small tanker sailed into \_\_\_\_\_dense fog outside \_\_\_\_\_port of \_\_\_\_\_Narvik \_\_\_\_\_other day. Because of \_\_\_\_\_fog she collided with \_\_\_\_\_general cargo carrier. She got \_\_\_\_\_hole in \_\_\_\_\_starboard bow under \_\_\_\_\_water line.

As \_\_\_\_\_ result \_\_\_\_\_ forward hold rapidly filled with \_\_\_\_\_ water so that \_\_\_\_\_ vessel could not continue on her course. \_\_\_\_\_ Captain ordered \_\_\_\_\_ Second Officer to send \_\_\_\_\_ distress call and ask for \_\_\_\_\_ tug boat assistance.

Half \_\_\_\_\_ hour later, two tugs arrived and towed \_\_\_\_\_ ship into Narvik. Luckily, there was no panic among crew and they all landed safely. \*

#### (30.5) Put back the missing articles in the following story:

In \_\_\_\_\_ evening, \_\_\_\_ Captain wrote in \_\_\_\_\_ ship's log-book: "\_\_\_\_ Mate was drunk today." After sobering up, \_\_\_\_ Mate went to \_\_\_\_ Captain to ask him to strike out \_\_\_\_ his entry.

"It's \_\_\_\_\_ first time in my life that I have been drunk and I promise never to do it again," he said.

"In this log we write only \_\_\_\_\_ truth," \_\_\_\_\_ Captain said.

\_\_\_\_\_ next day it was \_\_\_\_\_ Mate's turn to keep \_\_\_\_\_ log-book and he wrote in it: "\_\_\_\_\_ Captain was sober today!" \*

\* The above texts (4,5) were adapted from "MA $\Theta$ HMATA A $\Gamma\Gamma\Lambda$ IKH $\Sigma$ " by  $\Delta$ . Ποταμιάνος.

- (30.6) Rewrite the following replacing the 14 missing articles (a, an, the) in the texts below. Underline the articles used:
- 1. There are basically three kinds of boats: sailing, rowing and power boats. sailing boat uses sails for her propulsion, rowing boat oars and power boat engine.

- 2. scull is short, light oar that we use at stern of boat.
- 3. engine of power boat may be inboard or outboard motor, depending on position of motor on boat.

.....





# Adjectives: Cardinal / Ordinal Numbers, etc.

### ΑΡΙΘΜΗΤΙΚΑ.

### 1. Απόλυτοι και τακτικοί αφιθμοί.

Áðüëõôi éáñêì ï ß	Ôáêôêîï Báñêì ï B	Đñï óï ÷Þ óôçí
Cardinal Numbers	Ordinal Numbers	Ϊ ñèï ãñáößa(!)
(1) one	1 <sup>st</sup> first	first
(2) two	2 <sup>nd</sup> second	second
(3) three	3 <sup>rd</sup> third	third
(4) four	4 <sup>th</sup> fourth	f <u>ou</u> rth
(5) five	5 <sup>th</sup> fifth	fifth
(6) six	6 <sup>th</sup> sixth	
(7) seven	7 <sup>th</sup> seventh	
(8) eight	8 <sup>th</sup> eighth	eighth
(9) nine	9 <sup>th</sup> ninth	ninth
(10) ten	10 <sup>th</sup> tenth	_
(11) eleven	11 <sup>th</sup> eleventh	•
(12) twelve	12 <sup>th</sup> twelfth	twelfth
(13) thirteen	13 <sup>th</sup> thirteenth	
(14) fourteen	14 <sup>th</sup> fourteenth	f <u>ou</u> rteenth
(15) fifteen	15 <sup>th</sup> fifteenth	
(16) sixteen	16 <sup>th</sup> sixteenth	
(17) seventeen	17 <sup>th</sup> seventeenth	
(18) eighteen	18 <sup>th</sup> eighteenth	
(19) nineteen	19 <sup>th</sup> nineteenth	
(20) twenty	20 <sup>th</sup> twentieth	twentieth
(21) twenty-one	21 <sup>st</sup> twenty-first	twenty-first
(22) twenty-two	22 <sup>nd</sup> twenty-second	twenty-second



(23) twenty-three	23 <sup>rd</sup> twenty-third	twenty-third
(24) twenty-four	24 <sup>th</sup> twenty-fourth	
(25) twenty-five	25 <sup>th</sup> twenty-fifth	
(30) thirty	30 <sup>th</sup> thirtieth	
(40) forty	40 <sup>th</sup> fortieth	f <u>o</u> rtieth
(50) fifty	50 <sup>th</sup> fiftieth	
(60) sixty	60 <sup>th</sup> sixtieth	
(70) seventy	70 <sup>th</sup> seventieth	
(80) eighty	80 <sup>th</sup> eightieth	
(90) ninety	90 <sup>th</sup> ninetieth	
(100) one hundred	100 <sup>th</sup> hundredth	
(1,000) one thousand	1000 <sup>th</sup> thousandth	

### 2. Μαθηματικές πράξεις, κλάσματα και δεκαδικοί.

MATHEMATICAL TERMS
addition
[+] 2+8=10 (two <b>plus</b> eight is ten)
subtraction
[-] 5-1=4 (five <b>minus</b> one is four)
multiplication
[x] $2x6=12$ (two <b>times</b> six is twelve)
division
$[\div]$ 10÷2=5 (ten <b>by</b> two is five]
FRACTIONS
$\frac{1}{2}$ a half ń one half ( $\alpha\lambda\lambda\dot{\alpha}$ : half an hour)
1/4 a quarter ń one quarter (a quarter of an hour)
1/3 one third
Y three quarters (three quarters of an hour)
1/8 an eighth ń one eighth
$1\frac{1}{2}$ one and a half ( $\alpha\lambda\lambda\dot{\alpha}$ : one and a half hours)
DECIMAL POINT (Δεκαδικοί)
Προσοχή! Τελεία (point) αντί της ελληνικής υποδιαστολής (comma)
2.1 two <b>point</b> one
71.2 seventy-one <b>point</b> two
312.07 Three hundred and twelve <b>point</b> zero seven



### 3. Ημερομηνίες.

DATES Ερώτηση για ημερομηνία:
What's the date (today)? It's the twenty second.
It's eight o'clock
1998: one thousand nine hundred and ninety-eight
Þ nineteen hundred and ninety-eight
Þ nineteen ninety-eight Þ ninety-eight
( <b>UK</b> ) 31.11.98 Þ 31 <sup>st</sup> October 1998
Þ (The) thirty-first (of) October nineteen ninety-eight
( <b>US</b> ) 11.31.03 October 31 <sup>st</sup> 2003 (October the thirty-first two thousand and three)
P October (the) 31 <sup>st</sup> 2003

### **4. Ημέ**ες.

DAYS	Ερώτηση για ημέρα:
Monday	What's the day today? / What day is it today?
Tuesday	It's Sunday.
Wednesday	
Thursday	Ερώτηση για ημερομηνία:
Friday	What's the date today?
Saturday	It's Monday the second of November.
Sunday	(Monday, 2 <sup>nd</sup> November)

### 5. Ώρα.

ΤΙΜΕ Εφώτηση για την ώφα:

What time is it? / What's the time?

12.00 twelve o' clock

12.15 (a) quarter **past** twelve\* (**twelve fifteen**)\*\*

- 12.30 half **past** twelve\*(**twelve thirty**)\*\*
- 12.45 a) quarter to one\*(twelve forty-five)\*\*
- 12.46 forty-six minutes to one\* (για τα ενδιάμεσα από τα πεντάλεπτα)

SPECIAL SERVICE TIME

- 18.00 eighteen hundred hours
- 03.00 oh three **hundred hours**

\* λέγεται αναλογική (analogue time)

\*\* λέγεται ψηφιακή (digital time)



### 6. Εποχές - Μήνες (Βόρειο ημισφαίριο) Seasons - Months (Northern Hemisphere).

Winter	Spring	Summer	Autumn (US Fall)
December	March	June	September
January	April	July	October
February	May	August	November

### Notes.

••••••	

### PRACTICE (Unit 31).

### *Exercises.*

### (31.1) Write in words:

### Example:

333 <u>three h</u>	undred and thirty-three
1. 86	
2. 103	
3. 257	
4. 642	
5. 1,091	
6. 2,608	
7. 51,987	
8. 140,002	
9. 2,302,071	
10. 20,000,000	

### (31.2) Write in words:

### Example:

09/12/1977 = g	th Dec. 1977 = the ninth of December nineteen ninety-seven
1. 25/03/1821	
2. 28/ 10/ 1940	
3. 02/06/1948	
4. 01/01/2000	
5. 23/06/1999	
6. 31/ 11/ 1647	
7. 04/07/2003	

### (31.3) Write in words:

### Example:

1st	<u>first</u>
1. 2nd	
2. 3rd	
3. 4th	
4. 9th	
5. 22nd	
6. 52nd	
7. 98th	

### (31.4) Write the time in words:

a.	Digital (e.g. 02	.13 = two-thirteen)	
1.	03.16		
2.	04.35		
3.	12.30		
4.	15.40		
5.	20.53		

### b. Analogue (e.g. 02.10 = ten past two)

1. 05.15	
2. 06.20	
3. 07.30	
4. 08.45	
5. 09.50	
6. 10.00	
7. 14.50	
8. 22.35	

### (31.5) Answer these questions. They refer to the Northern Hemisphere:

1.	Which months are there in Spring?	
2.	Which months belong to Winter?	
3.	Which months does Summer have?	
4.	Which months make up Autumn?	
	*	

### (31.6) Today is Sunday. Say what:

1.	It was yesterday. It was
2.	It was the day before yesterday. It
3.	It was three days ago. It
4.	It will be tomorrow. It
5.	It will be the day after tomorrow. It
6.	It will be three days after today. It



Adjectives: Quantitative (some, any, no, much, many etc.)

### ΠΟΣΟΤΙΚΑ ΕΠΙΘΕΤΑ.

1. Εισαγωγή - Χρήση.

Some	YA
• Χρησιμοποιείται με αριθμήσιμα και μη	The s/s "Krystia" loaded some tea and some
αριθμήσιμα ουσιαστικά σε καταφατικές	bananas.
προτάσειs, καθώs και σε αιτήματα και	Would like <i>some</i> coffee?
προσφορές που γίνονται σαν ερωτήσεις.	Could I have <i>some</i> help with mooring?
any	
• Χρησιμοποιείται με αριθμήσιμα και μη	I didn't see <i>any</i> tanker(s) in the harbour.
αριθμήσιμα ουσιαστικά σε αρνητικές	He hasn't sailed <i>any</i> type of sailing boats.
προτάσεις, καθώς και με ερωτηματικές	Did they give you any information about the tide
προτάσεις.	She hasn't got any luggage
• Η μετατροπή Not any = no καθιστά	She's got no luggage. She's travelling light.
το ρήμα καταφατικό.	
A lot of/ lots of	There's a lot of traffic in the harbour today.
• Χρησιμοποιείται με αριθμήσιμα και μη	There <i>are a lot of</i> passengers on the main deck.
αριθμήσιμα ουσιαστικά σε καταφατικές	Lots of cadets never do make it to sea.
κυρίως προτάσεις.	
Much / O	
• Χρησιμοποιείται με μη αριθμήσιμα	We haven't got <i>much</i> luggage on board.
ουσιαστικά σε αρνητικές προτάσεις,	The steward says there isn't <i>much</i> coffee.
καθώς και ερωτηματικές προτάσεις.	How <i>much</i> sugar do we need for the voyage?
many	
• Χρησιμοποιείται με αριθμήσιμα	The steward has got too <i>many</i> suitcases to carry.
ουσιαστικά σε αρνητικές προτάσεις,	There weren't <i>many</i> cartons in hold 1.
καθώς και ερωτηματικές προτάσεις.	How <i>many</i> passengers can the ferry carry?
many	
• Χρησιμοποιείται ειδικά σε καταφατικέs	Many people prefer travelling by ship to
προτάσειs γνώμης.	travelling by aeroplane.
	In <i>many</i> cases accidents are due to human error.

## ADJECTIVES «

Προσέξτε!			
-Το <b>a lot /lots of</b> είναι πιο συνηθισμένο	There were <b>a lot of people</b> on board.		
από το <b>much/many</b> με τις καταφατικές προτάσεις.	A lot of the cargo was dangerous.		
-Μπορεί ωστόσο να χρησιμοποιείται και	Were <b>there a lot of people</b> on board?		
σε αρνητικές και ερωτηματικές προτάσεις.	A lot of the cargo was not dangerous.		
-Το lots of χρησιμοποιείται κυρίωs στην	"Was the cruise any good?"		
καθομιλουμένη και προφορική Αγγλική.	"Oh yes. We met <b>lots of</b> nice people, and we saw		
	lots of interesting places.		
All of			
• Χρησιμοποιείται με αριθμήσιμα	All of the ships belonging to Ona Shipping are		
ουσιαστικά στον πληθυντικό, καθώς και	called 'Olympics'.		
με μη αριθμήσιμα.	of is sometimes omitted, eg.		
	I wouldn't tell you for <i>all</i> the tea in China.		
A few			
• Χρησιμοποιείται με αριθμήσιμα και	He's not lonely. He's got a few friends on board.		
εκφράζει <b>θετική</b> στάση.			
A little	I still have a little hope about the ship being safe.		
• Χρησιμοποιείται με μη αριθμήσιμα και			
εκφράζει <b>αισιόδοξη</b> στάση.			
Few			
• Χρησιμοποιείται με αριθμήσιμα και			
εκφράζει <b>αρνητική</b> στάση.	Few captains would accept this terrible vessel.		
Little			
• Χρησιμοποιείται με μη αριθμήσιμα και	She has little money. It's not enough to go out.		
εκφράζει <b>απαισιόδοξn</b> στάση. There's <b>little</b> chance of them being rescue			
	weather.		
/ 9	5 A		

### Notes:

### PRACTICE (Unit 32).

### Exercises.

(32.1) Put in some, any, no, one, many.

1. On \_\_\_\_\_\_ very large liners there can be as \_\_\_\_\_\_ as seven navigating officers.



- 2. A fisherman is \_\_\_\_\_\_ who fishes for sport or to make his living.
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_ fish will bite unless there is \_\_\_\_\_\_ attractive bait on the hook.
- 4. The Mate reported that he did not encounter \_\_\_\_\_ problems during his watch.
- 5. The notice says that \_\_\_\_\_ luggage is allowed in the lounge. Don't leave it here.
- 6. There are almost \_\_\_\_\_ offshore islands round Crete.

### (32.2) Put the following adjectives in the blanks. Use each once only.

### A large amount, a lot of, few, no, many, all

- 1. Everybody liked the oranges, so there weren't ...... left.
- 2. ..... passengers travel by cargo liners nowadays.
- 3. ..... of money is needed to operate a shipping fleet.
- 4. ..... passengers are allowed down in the engine room.
- 5. ..... money on board should be kept in a safe place.
- 6. ..... passengers decided to have whisky, so there wasn't enough to go round.

### (32.3) Put in lots of, a few, much, little, a little.

- 1. We have ..... fuel left. Let's make for the nearest bunker station.
- 2. There isn't ..... time left. Hurry up with these pairs!
- 3. There are ..... offshore islands in the Ionian Sea.
- 4. There are only ..... problems left to settle before we sail.
- 5. It's ..... difficult but we'll manage.

### (32.4) Put in: someone, anyone, no one, something, anything, nothing, somewhere, anywhere, nowhere.

- 1. There is ..... here to see you, sir. Shall is ask him in.
- 2. I'm sorry, sir. The pump is beyond repair. There is ...... we can do.
- 3. I checked very carefully sir. There wasn't ..... in the radio room. Perhaps those voices came from ...... else.
- 4. ..... has called so far. Shall I wait any longer?
- 5. Can I give you .....? Let me know if you need ............
- 6. (At port) Are you going ..... tonight? No, ..... I'm watchman tonight.





Adjectives/Adverbs: Comparative and Superlative; Regular and Irregular

### ΕΠΙΘΕΤΑ

Τα επίθετα είναι λέξεις που προσδιορίζουν τα ουσιαστικά ή χρησιμοποιούνται μόνα τους. Μας δίνουν περισσότερες πληροφορίες σχετικά με τα ουσιαστικά (είδος, ιδιότητα).

Είναι ίδια και στα τρία γένη καθώς και στον πληθυντικό.

- It's a fast/ big/ slow vessel. The vessel is large and long.
- He is a **helpful** steward. (What kind of steward is he?)
- He is a **reckless** navigator.

Τα επιρρήματα παρουσιάζονται χωριστά στο επόμενο Unit.

### 1. Σχηματισμός παραθετικών.

	(Positive)	(Comparative)	(Superlative)
Túnos	Θετικός	Συγκριτικός	Υπερθετικός
<ul> <li>Επίθετα μιας</li> </ul>	short	short-er than	the short-est
συλλαβńs:	new	new-er	new-est
	fit	fit-ter	fit-test
-	great	great-er	great-est
	gay	gay-er	gay-est
	dry	dr-i-er	dr-i-est
	quiet	quiet	quiet
	nice	nicer	nicest
• Πολλά	clever	clever-er than	the clever-est
δισύλλαβα	stupid	stupid-er	stupid-est
σχηματίζουν			
μόνα τούς βαθυούς τους			
βαθμούς τους:			
• Άλλα δύο	clever	more clever than	the most clever
συλλαβών	confused		
περιφραστικά:			

<ul> <li>Επίθετα</li> <li>περισσοτέρων</li> <li>συλλαβών</li> <li>περιφραστικά:</li> </ul>	moderate precipitous beautiful	moderate precipitous <b>more</b> confused <b>than</b> beautiful	the r	moderate precipitous <b>nost</b> confused beautiful
• Δύο συλλαβών με κατάληξη –y:	cloudy windy fun-ny	cloud-i -er wind-i-er <b>than</b> fun-n-i-er	the	cloud-i-est wind-i -est fun-n-i-est
• Ανώμαλα επίθετα:	much little many few good bad far old	more less more fewer <b>than</b> better worse farther/further older/elder	the	most least most fewest best best worst farthest/furthest oldest/eldest

### 2. Χοήση - Συγκοίσεις.

Use	Examples
• as as για το θετικό βαθμό	Today is <i>as windy as</i> it was yesterday.
	This yacht is <i>as expensive as</i> the Queen's.
• (not as/soas) yıa บร	Italy is <i>not so/as sunny as</i> Greece,.
αρνητικές συγκρίσεις θετικού	( i.e. Greece is <i>sunnier</i> )
βαθμού	
• than χρησιμοποιείται μετά το	The tanker is <i>bigger than</i> the bulk carrier.
επίθετο για συγκρίσεις θετικού	The Mate is <i>more intelligent than</i> the Captain.
βαθμού	
• Much + comparative	The Mate is <i>much younger than</i> the Captain.
χρησιμοποιείστε το για	The <i>T/S</i> " <i>KIRKI</i> " is <i>much more beautiful than</i> the <i>M/V</i>
μεγαλύτερη έμφαση	"KALYPSO".



• The χρησιμοποιείται για	This is <i>the biggest</i> container ship in the world.
συγκρίσεις υπερθετικού βαθμού	She is <i>the most expensive</i> tanker in his fleet.
μετά το επίθετο.	

### Προσοχή !

Για κατάλογο επιθέτων εθνικότητας, χρωμάτων και σχημάτων, βλέπε Appendix 2.

### Notes:


### Practice (Unit 33).

### 🗷 Exercises.

### (33.1) Put the adjectives in the comparative degree.

- 1. Sailing on a JOYBOAT cruise is simply (great) \_\_\_\_\_\_ fun than sailing on the regular liner.
- 2. Look at the masts of the T/S "Hellas". The foremast is (high) \_\_\_\_\_\_ than the bowsprit.
- 3. The mizzen-mast is (low) \_\_\_\_\_\_ than the foremast.
- 4. J. Konrad's "Lord Jim" is a (good) \_\_\_\_\_\_ book than "Mutiny on the Bounty".
- 5. The "Queen Christina" is (beautiful) \_\_\_\_\_\_ than the "Princess Grace".
- 6. The tanker berthed alongside the quay is big, but the tanker entering port is (big)
- 7. Nuclear submarines are (wide) \_\_\_\_\_\_ than conventional submarines.
- 8. "I'm sorry, there is (little) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ stew left than I thought," said the steward.

### (33.2) Put the adjectives in the superlative degree.

- 1. The mainmast is the (high) \_\_\_\_\_ mast on a sailing ship.
- 2. Near the Cape Good Hope you may come across the (bad) \_\_\_\_\_\_ possible weather.
- 3. The "Atlantic Queen" may be the (expensive) \_\_\_\_\_\_ cruising ship in the world.
- 4. Scotland has about the (wet) \_\_\_\_\_\_ weather in the U.K.
- 5. This is the (little) \_\_\_\_\_\_ expensive hotel on the island.
- 6. After being salvaged, the "Nies" was pronounced as the (lucky) \_\_\_\_\_\_ vessel ever.

### (33.3) Put the right adjectives in the positive degree:

### difficult, long, slow, fast, tough

- 1. Travelling by ship is not so \_\_\_\_\_\_ as travelling by bus.
- 2. Being an engineer on board a ship may be as \_\_\_\_\_\_ a job as any.
- 3. The "Panayia Tinos" is as \_\_\_\_\_\_ as the "Afaia", they arrive at Mykonos together.
- 4. The Nile is not as \_\_\_\_\_\_ as the Amazon.
- 5. Tug boats have as \_\_\_\_\_\_ engines as possible to be able to tow much larger boats.



Adjectives/Adverbs: Comparative and Superlative; Regular and Irregular

### ΕΠΙΘΕΤΑ

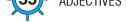
Τα επίθετα είναι λέξεις που προσδιορίζουν τα ουσιαστικά ή χρησιμοποιούνται μόνα τους. Μας δίνουν περισσότερες πληροφορίες σχετικά με τα ουσιαστικά (είδος, ιδιότητα).

- Είναι ίδια και στα τρία γένη καθώς και στον πληθυντικό.
- It's a fast/ big/ slow vessel. The vessel is large and long.
- He is a **helpful** steward. (What kind of steward is he?)
- He is a **reckless** navigator.

Τα επιρρήματα παρουσιάζονται χωριστά στο επόμενο Unit.

### 1. Σχηματισμός παραθετικών.

	(Positive)	(Comparative)	(Superlative)
Túnos	Θετικός	Συγκριτικός	Υπερθετικός
<ul> <li>Επίθετα μιας</li> </ul>	short	short- <b>er than</b>	the short-est
συλλαβńs:	new	new-er	new-est
	fit	fit-ter	fit-test
	great	great-er	great-est
	gay	gay-er	gay-est
	dry	dr-i-er	dr- <b>i-est</b>
	quiet	quiet	quiet
	nice	nicer	nicest
• Πολλά	clever	clever-er <b>than</b>	the clever-est
δισύλλαβα	stupid	stupid-er	stupid-est
σχηματίζουν			
μόνα τούς			
βαθμούς τους:			
• Άλλα δύο	clever	more clever than	the most clever
συλλαβών	confused		
περιφραστικά:			



<ul> <li>Επίθετα</li> <li>περισσοτέρων</li> <li>συλλαβών</li> <li>περιφραστικά:</li> </ul>	moderate precipitous beautiful	moderate precipitous <b>more</b> confused <b>than</b> beautiful	the r	moderate precipitous <b>nost</b> confused beautiful
• Δύο συλλαβών με κατάληξη –y:	cloudy windy fun-ny	cloud-i -er wind-i-er <b>than</b> fun-n-i-er	the	cloud-i-est wind-i -est fun-n-i-est
• Ανώμαλα επίθετα:	much little many few good bad far old	more less more fewer <b>than</b> better worse farther/further older/elder	the	most least most fewest best worst farthest/furthest oldest/eldest

# 2. Χοήση - Συγκοίσεις.

ρήση - Συγκρίσεις.	
Use	Examples
• as as για το θετικό βαθμό	Today is <i>as windy as</i> it was yesterday.
	This yacht is <i>as expensive as</i> the Queen's.
• (not as/soas) yia tis	Italy is not so/as sunny as Greece,.
αρνητικές συγκρίσεις θετικού	( i.e. Greece is <i>sunnier</i> )
βαθμού	
• than χρησιμοποιείται μετά το	The tanker is <i>bigger than</i> the bulk carrier.
επίθετο για συγκρίσειs θετικού	The Mate is <i>more intelligent than</i> the Captain.
βαθμού	
• Much + comparative	The Mate is <i>much younger than</i> the Captain.
χρησιμοποιείστε το για	The <i>T/S</i> " <i>KIRKI</i> " is <i>much more beautiful than</i> the <i>M/V</i>
μεγαλύτερη έμφαση	"KALYPSO".



• The χρησιμοποιείται για	This is <i>the biggest</i> container ship in the world.
συγκρίσεις υπερθετικού βαθμού	She is <i>the most expensive</i> tanker in his fleet.
μετά το επίθετο.	

### Προσοχή !

Για κατάλογο επιθέτων εθνικότητας, χρωμάτων και σχημάτων, βλέπε Appendix 2.

### Notes:


### Practice (Unit 33).

### Z Exercises.

### (33.1) Put the adjectives in the comparative degree.

- 1. Sailing on a JOYBOAT cruise is simply (great) \_\_\_\_\_\_ fun than sailing on the regular liner.
- 2. Look at the masts of the T/S "*Hellas*". The foremast is (high) \_\_\_\_\_\_ than the bowsprit.
- 3. The mizzen-mast is (low) \_\_\_\_\_\_ than the foremast.
- 4. J. Konrad's "Lord Jim" is a (good) \_\_\_\_\_\_ book than "Mutiny on the Bounty".
- 5. The "Queen Christina" is (beautiful) \_\_\_\_\_\_ than the "Princess Grace".
- 6. The tanker berthed alongside the quay is big, but the tanker entering port is (big)
- 7. Nuclear submarines are (wide) \_\_\_\_\_\_ than conventional submarines.
- 8. "I'm sorry, there is (little) \_\_\_\_\_\_ stew left than I thought," said the steward.

### (33.2) Put the adjectives in the superlative degree.

- 1. The mainmast is the (high) \_\_\_\_\_ mast on a sailing ship.
- 2. Near the Cape Good Hope you may come across the (bad) \_\_\_\_\_ possible weather.
- 3. The "Atlantic Queen" may be the (expensive) \_\_\_\_\_\_ cruising ship in the world.
- 4. Scotland has about the (wet) \_\_\_\_\_ weather in the U.K.
- 5. This is the (little) \_\_\_\_\_\_ expensive hotel on the island.
- 6. After being salvaged, the "Nies" was pronounced as the (lucky) \_\_\_\_\_\_ vessel ever.

### (33.3) Put the right adjectives in the positive degree:

### difficult, long, slow, fast, tough

- 1. Travelling by ship is not so \_\_\_\_\_\_ as travelling by bus.
- 2. Being an engineer on board a ship may be as \_\_\_\_\_\_ a job as any.
- 3. The "Panayia Tinos" is as \_\_\_\_\_\_ as the "Afaia", they arrive at Mykonos together.
- 4. The Nile is not as \_\_\_\_\_\_ as the Amazon.
- 5. Tug boats have as \_\_\_\_\_\_ engines as possible to be able to tow much larger boats.



### Adverbs: Manner, Time, Frequency

### ЕПІРРНМАТА.

### 1. Τα επιρρήματα μπορεί να είναι τροπικά, χρονικά, συχνότητας, τοπικά.

<ul> <li>Τα τροπικά επιρρήματα συνήθως</li> </ul>	careful-ly, wise-ly, calm-ly,
σχηματίζονται:	áëë Ü angry – angr <b>-i-ly</b>
adjective + -ly	
• Απαντούν σε ερωτήσεις που αρχίζουν με	How does that vessel sail?
"how".	The vessel sails quickly.
• Μερικά επιρρήματα δεν σχηματίζονται με	fast, hard, very, well
ly, ενώ πολλά επίθετα χρησιμοποιούνται και	He speaks English well.
σαν επιρρήματα.	Seamen have to work hard.
• Τα επιρρήματα χρησιμοποιούνται για να	
προσδιορίζουν ρήματα.	Officers must navigate carefully.
• Τα επιρρήματα προσδιορίζουν επίσης τα	Some seamen are very tough.
επίθετα, δηλαδή σας λένε περισσότερα	Seamen's wives aren't really happy.
πράγματα για το επίθετο.	The Captain was <b>extremely</b> angry with me.
• Τα τοπικά επιρρήματα απαντούν στην	The Captain's on the bridge.
ερώτηση where?	Where is the vessel?
examples:	It's in the harbour.
here, there, on the left, on the right	
in the harbour, on the sea, abroad, in	
Greece, everywhere, at home	
• Τα επιρρήματα εκφράζουν <b>χρόνο</b> .	When did the "Brigitte" sail?
Απαντούν στην ερώτηση <b>when</b> ?. Όπωs:	The S/S BRIGITTE sailed yesterday.
Today, tomorrow, yesterday, every day,	The <i>M</i> / <i>VPETROS</i> will sail tomorrow.
soon, never, yet, always, last month, etc.	The F/B STAVROULA sails to Poros every
	day. She always arrives on time.
	The C/S ELENI is due here next month.
<ul> <li>Τα επιρρήματα εκφράζουν συχνότητα.</li> </ul>	
• Ρωτούν <b>how often</b> ?	The T/S KIRKI always sails on time.



- Θέση των επιρρημάτων συχνότητας:
- α. Μπροστά από το κύριο ρήμα εκτόs
- από το ρήμα **to be**).
- β. Για σύνθετους τύπους ρημάτων μετά το
- πρώτο βοηθητικό.

### 2. Σύνταξη των επιρρημάτων.

- Η σειρά των επιροημάτων στην πρόταση είναι τροπικά, τοπικά, χρονικά. The crew worked very hard on deck yesterday.
- Με ρήματα κινήσεως η σειρά γίνεται τοπικά, τροπικά, χρονικά. The ship sailed into harbour too fast last night.
- Για περισσότερα από ένα χρονικά προηγείται το ειδικότερο. The ship set sail at **08.00 in the morning yesterday**.
- Τα ρήματα feel, look, smell, taste συντάσσονται με επίθετο και όχι με επίρρημα. The food smells nice and tastes wonderful. She looks beautiful but I know she feels terrible.

### Notes:

### 

### PRACTICE (Unit 34).

### 🗷 Exercises.

### (34.1) Find the words in the Glossary:

verbs:	nouns:	adverbs:
send	nuts	again
carry	draft mark	carefully
check	box	quickly
open	valve	crosswise
tighten	shaft	slowly
mark	garbage	right now
throw	bolts	gently
turn	rope	overboard
rotate	safety net	in that direction

### (34.2) Now match the words in the columns to write orders/commands as in the example:

Example: Send the rope quickly. The ship is **never** late. They have **often** behaved badly. Does the Mate **always** supervise loading?



1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	

### (34.3) Put always, never, sometimes to complete the following:

### Example:

Cars have the engine in the back.(sometimes). Cars sometimes have the engine in the back.

- 1. Air-cooled engines have had water jackets around their cylinders.(never)
- 2. It is best to book your passage on a passenger ship well in advance.(always)
- 3. At sea hesitate to offer help! (never)
- 4. Cross-Channel ferries have high-powered engines to maintain a speed of 20 knots in all kinds of weather.(always)
- 5. The Bosun visits the library of the ship (rarely)
- 6. The two deck-hands play trictrac [=tavli, backgammon] in their free time (usually)
- 8. The Chief Engineer works on the lathe himself (sometimes)

### (34.4) Put in: orally, automatically, often, usually, freely, curiously, widely, seldom, always.

- 1. A valve opens ...... when steam or other pressure becomes too high.
- 2. Diesel engines are ..... accepted for heavy duty.
- 3. Describe ...... how the can follower is connected to the rocker arm.
- 4. Make sure the coolant can flow .....
- 5. The captain looked at him .....
- 6. Aircrafts are ..... powered with internal combustion engines nowadays.
- 7. Nowadays there are ..... many different kinds of engineers working in large projects.
- 8. Engine valves are ..... opened by means of cams.
- 9. Ships must ..... turn on their lights in the evening.



### **General Practice (30-34)**

### 🗷 Exercises.

#### (35.1) Choose the correct answer:

- 1. ..... largest type of cargo ship is the tanker.
  - A. a B. an C. the
- 2. An expansion tank allows ..... oil to expand in hot weather. A. a B. an C. the
- 3. It's a basic machine consisting of a wheel that rotates on ...... shaft. A. a B. an C. the
- Plastics are available in ..... forms.
   A. many B. little C. much
- 5. ..... of cargo ships carry passengers. A. A lot of B. A few C. Some
- 6. There wasn't ...... time before sailing so the passengers went on board immediately.A. a little B. many C. much
- 7. ..... passengers were on the promenade deck. It was very cold.A. Many of B. A few C. Few
- main massenger liners operating in the Aegean have to cover profitable and unprofitable routes.
   A. All B. A lot C. Some of
- 9. Nuclear submarines stay much longer under the water ..... conventional submarines. A. from B. as C. than

### (35.2) Choose the right answer:

- The "Cat 1" is the ..... liner I have seen.
   A. fastest B. most fastest C. faster
- The G.O. sent the signal urgently yesterday morning ......
   A. in June B. on 21st June C. at 07.30



- February is the shortest month ..... the year.
   A. from B. in C. of
- Engine valves are ..... opened by means of cams.
   A. usually B. almost C. fast
- Fixed solar collectors are used ..... than other types.
   A. most B. more C. best





Prepositions: Location (at, in, on, inside, outside, over, next to), Time (at, in, on, during, throughout, over), Direction (to, into, out of, from, over,)

Oι Προθέσεις είναι λέξεις που δείχνουν τη σχέση μιας λέξεως με μια άλλη, π.χ. the door of the house, one of them (of= $\alpha$ πό)

### ΤΙΜΕ (Χοονικές Προθέσεις)

### in

- Για μήνες, εποχές, χρονιές, αιώνες, χρονικές περιόδους seasons (in winter), years (in 2002), centuries (in the 19th century), periods of time (in five minutes, in a fortnight, in fifty years)
- Για μέρος της ημέρας
   in the morning, in the afternoon
   in the evening, in the night (but: at night)

### at

- Για ώρες, ώρες φαγητού, κλπ.
   at seven o'clock, at lunch time
   at noon (at 12.00 am.), at midnight (at 12.00 pm.)
- Για περίοδο δύο ή τριών ημερών at Easter
  - at Christmas
  - at the weekend

### on

- Για ημέρες και ημερομηνίες
  - on Monday, on my birthday
  - on 20 July 2002 (the 20th of July 2002)
  - on Saturday morning, on a fine spring morning
  - on Friday evenings
  - on Christmas Eve, on Easter Sunday

### during/throughout/over

### • Για διάρκεια

The Captain stayed on the bridge **during** the night.

- It happened **during** his shift.
- The mysterious lady remained in her cabin throughout the voyage.



Will you be at sea over the Christmas period?

### LOCATION-PLACE (Προθέσεις τόπου και κατευθύνσεως)

### in

- Για γενικό τόπο
  - in Piraeus
  - in Greece
- Μέσα σε συγκεκριμένο χώρο
  - in the room
  - in my pocket αλλά και
  - in the sky, in the air  $\varkappa\lambda\pi$ .

### at

- Για συγκεκριμένο τόπο
  - at school, at the bus stop,
  - at the airport κλπ.
- Κοντά
  - at the door (e.g. There's someone at the door) at the table (They were sitting at the table playing scrabble) at table (I found the family at table - the were having supper.)

### on

- Επάνω σε συγπεπομμένο τόπο
  on the desk (He left his books on the desk)
  on the table (The tools were on the table)
  on an island (They spent their holidays on Milos)
  on the page (The picture of the tanker is on page 67.)
- Γενικότερα
  - on the ground, on the grass on the ceiling, on the wall, on the door (Have seen the notice on the notice board on the door of the officer's room?)

### inside/outside

- Στο εσωτερικό ενός χώρου We'll talk inside the office, The jewels are inside the safe, They have a military base inside the airport. αλλά και για χρόνο: The tanker will call at Alexandria inside the hour.
- Στο εξωτερικό ενός χώρου Please play outside the house (αλλά κάπου κοντά) I've no time to chat, I'm calling from outside the country. Why are there so many policemen outside the stadium?

### over

- Από πάνω χωρίς να αγγίζει
   A lamp hung over the door of the cabin
- Από πάνω και να καλύπτει
   The lookout was wearing a large jacket over his sweater



Από ένα σημείο μέχοι ένα άλλο
 The passengers came ashore over the gangway.

### DIRECTION/MOVEMENT (Προθέσεις κατεύθυνσης/κίνησης)

### into/out of/onto

Για κίνηση προς τα μέσα/έξω
 The Chief Engineer picked up the engine log and walked out of the engine room.
 The Captain went into the dining room.
 How does one get onto the awning-deck.

#### from...to

Για κίνηση από ένα μέρος σε ένα άλλο.
 The tanker sailed from Cape Town to Hong Kong.

#### along/across

Για κίνηση κατά μήκος/πλάτος
 They sailed along the coast trying to find a suitable bay to moor.
 Big ocean liners used to sail across the Atlantic until a few years ago.

#### against/towards

- Για κίνηση εναντίον/προς κάποιον
  - The ladder was leaning **against** the wall.
  - The goalkeeper kicked the ball towards the opponent territory.

The AB walked hastily towards the poop.

#### (a)round

 Για κυκλική ή περιφερειακή κίνηση, τοποθέτηση ή παράκαμψη The earth goes round the sun. All the officers were sitting round the dinner table.

The passenger had to go all **round** the saloon to get to the gangway.

### for

 Για κίνηση με συγκεκριμένο προορισμό That night the ship set sail for Port Said.

#### through

Για κίνηση διαμέσου ενός χώρου
 As the oil passes through the filter a lot of dirt is taken out.
 The drill pierced right through the wood.
 The bird flew in through the open porthole.

#### up/down

 Για κίνηση προς τα επάνω/κάτω (προς υψηλότερο/χαμηλότερο σημείο) The explorer sailed up the river to find its source. He drove down the street towards the harbour. The group decided to take a trip up the Bosphorus. The Mate drove up the road until he got to the park.



### PRACTICE (Unit 36).

### *Æ* Exercises.

### (36.1) Put in the correct time preposition (at, in, on, during).

- 1. The T/S "Ariadni" was built \_\_\_\_\_ 1990.
- 2. The vessel entered port \_\_\_\_\_ Monday.
- 3. The M/S "Kirki "sails \_\_\_\_\_ 6:00 every morning.
- 4. The new Captain will join the crew \_\_\_\_\_ 1st May.
- 5. The M/V "Theseus" will be launched \_\_\_\_\_ April.
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_ the repairs the crew often went ashore on excursions.
- 7. The engine was overhauled \_\_\_\_\_ Spring last year.

### (36.2) Put in the correct time preposition (at, in, on, throughout, over).

- 1. It is not dangerous to navigate a ship \_\_\_\_\_ night.
- The ship will drop anchor \_\_\_\_\_ noon but the passengers will go ashore in the evening and return on board \_\_\_\_\_ midnight.
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon the passengers are usually on the promenade deck.
- 4. The helmsman stayed by the wheel \_\_\_\_\_ his shift.
- 5. "Good night. I'll see you \_\_\_\_\_ the morning."
- 6. The Captain promised that he would be at home \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas
- 7. [The] Helicopter will arrive \_\_\_\_\_ UTC .....
- 8. Will you be home \_\_\_\_\_ the Easter vacation.
- 9. We expect Vangeli home \_\_\_\_\_ Easter.

### (36.3) Put in the correct location preposition.

- a: (on, in, at, inside, outside, next to/close to/beside, over, of)
- 1. Where is the sextant? It's \_\_\_\_\_my cabin.
- 2. Don't put combustibles \_\_\_\_\_\_ the incinerator.
- 3. The tall sailor was \_\_\_\_\_ the door your cabin.
- 4. Are you going ashore \_\_\_\_\_ the next port of call?
- 5. You'll find the Purser \_\_\_\_\_ the awning deck.
- 6. I can see someone \_\_\_\_\_ the boathouse; ask him to come out.
- 7. I'm not under command \_\_\_\_\_ position.
- 8. He is \_\_\_\_\_ the jetty waiting for the ship.

### b: (on, in, at, up, onto, between, under/below, over/above, behind, in front of)

- 1. The towboat is \_\_\_\_\_ the ferry boat.
- 2. Look! Some seagulls are flying \_\_\_\_\_ the ship !
- 3. There is a general cargo carrier docked \_\_\_\_\_\_ the little tanker and the OBO.
- 4. You can't see the ferry because it's \_\_\_\_\_ the container ship.
- 5. Be careful! The cat is sleeping \_\_\_\_\_ the table.



- 6. Oars rest \_\_\_\_\_ rowlocks.
- 7. The fast ferry will call \_\_\_\_\_ Genoa in 50 minutes.
- 8. I' m meeting some friends down \_\_\_\_\_ the beach. Like to come ?
- 9. He climbed \_\_\_\_\_\_ the stairs and got \_\_\_\_\_ the awning deck.

(36.4) Put in the correct direction preposition: to(3), into(2), out of, along, across, ahead, up, through, in, down:

### Example:

I can climb <u>up</u> the mast, but it's more difficult to climb <u>down</u>.

- 1. Drain the water \_\_\_\_\_ the intermediate bearing.
- 2. Be careful! Don't drop waste rags \_\_\_\_\_ the reduction gear.
- 3. The function of the device is to convert heat \_\_\_\_\_ mechanical energy.
- 4. The order "Midships" means, "Bring the wheel \_\_\_\_\_ the midships position."
- 5. The ship is swinging \_\_\_\_\_ starboard.
- 6. The current is setting the ship \_\_\_\_\_ port side.
- 7. Either the Phoenicians or the Greeks first sailed \_\_\_\_\_ the Atlantic.
- 8. "Vessel sailing \_\_\_\_\_ port, keep clear."
- 9. Now proceed \_\_\_\_\_ ice channel.

### (36.5) Put in: against, from, to, into, around, towards, down, through.

- 1. The ship turned \_\_\_\_\_\_ to look for the man who had fallen overboard.
- 2. The Captain of the damaged cruiser set a collision course and steamed \_\_\_\_\_\_ the enemy destroyer.
- 3. The S/S "NAIAS" is sailing \_\_\_\_\_ Piraeus \_\_\_\_\_ Santorini.
- 4. Strong winds in your position are expected \_\_\_\_\_ an eastern direction.
- 5. OK. Transfer person \_\_\_\_\_ my vessel by boat.
- 6. At present his ship is proceeding \_\_\_\_\_ Gibraltar.
- 7. The vacuum created by the piston, sucks \_\_\_\_\_\_ the petrol/air fuel mixture \_\_\_\_\_\_ the intake valve.
- 8. When the preparations were over the vessel got \_\_\_\_\_\_ fairway (navigable channel).





### **Practice in Miscellaneous Prepositions**

### (37.6) Put in the correct preposition:

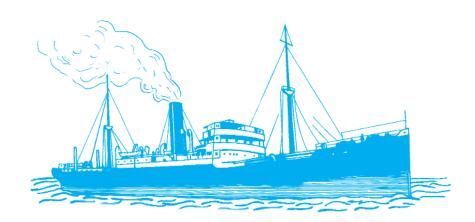
- 1. Where are you James? Here \_\_\_\_\_ in the hold, sir.
- 2. There are a lot of passengers \_\_\_\_\_ the promenade deck.
- 3. Now they are coming ashore \_\_\_\_\_ the gangway.
- 4. Some seagulls are flying \_\_\_\_\_ the sailing ship.

# (37.7) Make sure you know the following words. If necessary use your dictionary. Then put the correct preposition in the blanks:

general cargo carrier	steamship
loading operation	derrick
tugboat/towboat	cases

The day is fine. I'm going \_\_\_\_\_a walk \_\_\_\_\_the little port of Stylis to have a look \_\_\_\_\_\_the ships. It is not a busy day but there are quite a few people \_\_\_\_\_\_the quay watching a general cargo carrier. She is loading cargo. The derrick is turning \_\_\_\_\_\_to load some heavy cases \_\_\_\_\_\_the lorries \_\_\_\_\_\_the deck. There are some officers watching the loading operation. \_\_\_\_\_\_this moment I can see a tugboat towing a small steamship \_\_\_\_\_\_here. \*

\* The above text was adapted from "MAOHMATA AFFAIKH $\Sigma$ " by  $\Delta$ . Ποταμιάνος.





### **Prepositional Phrases**

### Φράσεις με προθέσεις.

### 1. Εισαγωγή.

Η Αγγλική διακρίνεται για τη μεγάλη χρήση προθέσεων. Εκτός από τη συνηθισμένη χρήση που δίνουμε στο 36, οι προθέσεις συνδυάζονται με ουσιαστικά, επίθετα και ρήματα και δημιουργούν ιδιωματικές φράσεις που οι σπουδαστές της Αγγλικής πρέπει να απομνημονεύουν.

### 2. Σχηματισμός.

### α. Ουσιαστικά με προθέσεις:

- Οι προθέσεις μπορεί να προτάσσονται: The crew returned to the harbour on foot. The Captain visited the Sounion. He went by car. When Thanos returned to the boat he found the other officers at work. The pilot was on board.
- Οι προθέσεις μπορεί να έπονται: The collision caused damage to the scull.

### β. Επίθετα με προθέσεις:

The Third Engineer **was very good** at fixing things on the lathe. Why were you so **angry with** the Bosun.

### γ. Ρήματα με προθέσεις:

- Η πρόθεση μπορεί να μην επηρεάζει τη σημασία του ρήματος When we arrive at Calais we go by train to Paris. Nobody could tell the reason for his refusal.
- Η πρόθεση μπορεί να επηρεάζει τη σημασία του ρήματος After sailing for three hours we called at Santorini. (=visited) The wireless operator switched/turned on the radio and listened on the international call and distress frequency for signals of vessels in distress. Then he switched off and went to bed. The Captain ordered the engines to stand by.

### PRACTICE Unit (38).

### 🗷 Exercises.

### (38.1) Put in the correct prepositional phrases in the blanks:

damage to, by sea, by air, by car, on foot, reason for, at work, at sea, on a voyage



- 1. It was a very long trip. We were \_\_\_\_\_ for ten days.
- 2. The yacht sailed \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the tropics.
- 3. Travelling \_\_\_\_\_\_ is safer compared to sea and land travel.
- 4. The accident was their fault so they paid for the \_\_\_\_\_ the bows.
- 5. The vessel was late but nobody knew the \_\_\_\_\_\_ the delay.
- 6. As it was raining I couldn't walk. So I went to work \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7. As the harbour was very near they returned \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. He decided to travel \_\_\_\_\_\_ because it was more pleasant to be on ship.
- 9. When he entered the workshop, he found everybody \_\_\_\_\_\_.

### (38.2) Put in the correct prepositional phrases in the blanks. Adjust the verb form:

switch on, switch off, stand by, turn on, turn off,

go on board, arrive at, call at

- 1. The Coast Guard checked if the rescue boat crews were
- 2. It was getting dark so they \_\_\_\_\_\_ deck lighting.
- 3. After checking the hold he \_\_\_\_\_ hold lights.
- 4. It is warm and humid. Just \_\_\_\_\_\_ the ventilation.
- 5. The taxi drove as fast as possible, but when they \_\_\_\_\_\_ the harbour, they discovered that the ship had already set sail.
- 6. Bari was the first port of destination. They \_\_\_\_\_\_ it at six.
- 7. He put the workpiece on the chuck and \_\_\_\_\_\_ the lathe.
- 8. As soon as the liner docked, the waiting passengers \_\_\_\_\_

### (38.3) Put in the correct prepositional phrases in the blanks:

arrival at, charge of, damage to, entrance to,

interest in, notice to, provision for, way of

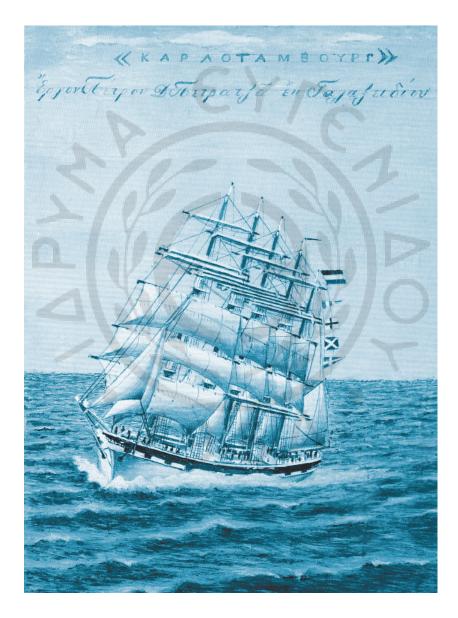
- 1. The Chief Engineer takes an \_\_\_\_\_\_ reading old cartoons.
- 2. There is \_\_\_\_\_\_ deck-class passengers on the "King Minos".
- 3. Did you see the afternoon \_\_\_\_\_ Mariners? There will be some interesting weather during the night.
- 4. Yes, I think the Captain will change course and sail by \_\_\_\_\_ Corinth Canal.
- 5. After the collision they found that there was a lot of \_\_\_\_\_\_ the hull.
- 6. They are building a new lighthouse at the \_\_\_\_\_\_ the harbour.
- 7. After their \_\_\_\_\_\_ the port of Spetses, they looked for a good hotel.

### (38.4) Put in the correct prepositional phrases in the blanks:

good at, angry at, kind of, clever at, happy with, bad at, nice of, nice to



- 1. He said that it was \_\_\_\_\_ me to invite him.
- 2. I asked him not to be \_\_\_\_\_\_ her but to try to be \_\_\_\_\_\_ her.
- 3. As a pupil she was very \_\_\_\_\_\_ drawing. She couldn't even draw a daisy.
- 4. It was very \_\_\_\_\_ him to do it for me but I wasn't very \_\_\_\_\_ the result.
- 5. The teacher said that the cadet was very \_\_\_\_\_ Mathematics but he wasn't as \_\_\_\_\_ Navigation.





### Connectives: and, but, or (coordinating), because (subordinating)

### Σύνδεσμοι.

 Οι Σύνδεσμοι είναι λέξεις που συνδέουν με διάφορους εννοιολογικούς τρόπους τις κύριες με τις δευτερεύουσες προτάσεις.

Coordinating (Συντονιστικοί)	
and (γενικόs συμπλεκτικόs),	The Mate likes football and basket.
but (αντιθετικόs: προσθέτει κάτι που δεν	The Chief Engineer is honest and clever.
αναμένεται),	The Captain gave his orders and went to bed.
or (διαζευκτικό: προσθέτει κάτι, μια	The Bosun works quickly <b>but</b> accurately.
εναλλακτική επιλογή).	Not only the passengers <b>but</b> also the crew had
	to be examined.
• Αυτοί οι σύνδεσμοι συνδέουν ζευγάρια:	We went to the agent early <b>but</b> we didn't find
Ουσιαστικών, επιθέτων, επιρρημάτων,	any tickets
ρημάτων, φράσεων και προτάσεων (logical	You can go on foot <b>or</b> take the tram.
connectives)	
Subordinating(Υπαγωγικοί)	
because	
• Είναι ο σύνδεσμος που εξηγεί για πιο	Because the weather was very bad the vessel
λόγο/απία έγινε, γίνεται ή θα γίνει κάτι.	did not sail.
	The vessel stayed at port <b>because</b> there was no
	charter.
	He resigned, not <b>because</b> he didn't like the
	ship but because he disliked the captain.

### Notes:

•••	•••	••	•••	•••	••	•••	•••	•••	••••	•••	•••	••••	•••	••••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	••••	••••	•••	•••	••••	• • • •	•••	••••	••••	••••	••••	•••	••••	•••	••••	••••	••••	•••	••••	••••	• • • • •	••••
•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	••••	•••	••••	••••	•••	••••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	••••	••••	•••	•••	••••	••••	••••	••••	••••	••••	••••	•••	••••	•••	••••	••••	••••	•••	••••	••••	••••	••••
•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	••••	••••	•••	•••		•••	••••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	•••	••••		•••	•••	••••	• • • •	••••		••••	••••	••••	•••	••••	•••		••••	••••	•••	• • • •	••••	• • • • •	



### **PRACTICE Unit (39)**

### *Exercises.*

### (39.1) Put in the correct linking word (and, but, or, because).

- 1. Go to the expansion tank \_\_\_\_\_\_ check the water level.
- 2. The Captain has gone ashore \_\_\_\_\_\_ the Chief Officer is on board.
- 3. Overhaul the compressor periodically \_\_\_\_\_\_ inspect each part of the machine.
- 4. A cadet can train as a Deck Officer \_\_\_\_\_ an Engineer Officer.
- 5. The ship was old \_\_\_\_\_ in good condition.
- 6. Warships are designed for speed \_\_\_\_\_ manoeuvrability.
- 7. Multi-deck vessels have 'tween decks \_\_\_\_\_\_ these help stowage.

# (39.2) Join the following pairs of sentences. Use *and*, *but*, *or*, *because*. The first one has been done for you.

### Example:

A vessel has a main engine.
A vessel has auxiliary machinery.
A vessel has a main engine and auxiliary machinery.
You can buy a centrifugal pump.

You can buy a gear-wheel pump. (Either will do very well).

.....

2. Passenger liners have high superstructures They need a large number of cabins.

- 3. Old cruise ships operate as hotels. There is no business for them on cruises.
- A passenger liner carries passengers. A passenger liner carries cargo.
- .....

.....

.....

- A passenger liner can carry passengers. A passenger liner cannot carry vehicles.
- 6. A receiver can receive messages.
  - A receiver cannot send messages.



**Punctuation:** Apostrophe('), colon(:), comma(,), full stop/period (.), question mark(?), capitalization

### Απόστοοφος - Apostrophe ('):

Στον προφορικό λόγο πολλές φορές προφέρουμε δύο λέξεις σαν μία, με αποτέλεσμα να "κόβονται" κάποια γράμματα. Σ´ εκείνο το σημείο μπαίνει απόστροφος.

• Απόστροφος μπαίνει με αντωνυμίες, με	-I'm, he's, They've, You'd, she'll etc.
ουσιαστικά, και με συγκεκομμένουs τύπουs	-my sister's coming, the money's in the wallet
βοηθητικών και εγκλιτικών ρημάτων.	etc.
	-can't, shan't, won't, wouldn't, etc.
• Απόστροφος μπαίνει επίσης στη γενική	-the bosun's orders, the captain's cabin,
κτητική (Σαξονική γενική).	-John's wife, the dog's food, the ship's articles,
	April fool's day, the cadets' uniforms, the cats'
	food, etc.

### Άνω κάτω τελεία - colon (:)

• Βάζουμε άνω κάτω τελεία ανάμεσα στην ώρα	What time is it? It's 9:00
και τα λεπτά.	There are two types of ships:
• Για να εισάγουμε μια εξήγηση ή ένα	commercial ships and war ships
παράδειγμα.	3 -

### Kóµµα - comma (,)

Συνήθως τα κόμματα χωρίζουν κύριες από	The watch Engineer was very tired, so he
δευτερεύουσες προτάσεις και μπαίνουν	went to bed.
μπροστά στο σύνδεσμο:	After arriving, he went to rest.
• Γενικά για να δείξουμε μικρή παύση. Μετά	Did you see the super tanker? Yes, I did
апо́ Yes каı No.	It was late, but he telephoned.
• Συχνά βάζουμε κόμματα μπροστά στο and	There was a strong wind, and it rained.
каı та but, too	I saw the movie, too.



### **Τελεία - Full stop (.)**

• Οι προτάσεις καταλήγουν σε τελείες.	The Chief Engineer is in the library.
• Η τελεία χωρίζει δύο κύριες προτάσεις.	He is reading about a new turbo changer.
	He was working hard. There was nothing else
	to do.

### Εφωτηματικό - Question mark (?)

<ul> <li>Βάζουμε στις ευθείες ερωτήσεις (αυτές δηλ.</li> </ul>	What's the matter with the valve?
που καταλήγουν σε ερωτηματικό).	Who's next watch?
6	Is this the Captain?

### Κεφαλαία - Capitals.

<ul> <li>Πρώτη λέξη μιας προτάσεως.</li> </ul>	Last year we spent a few days								
• Μπροστά στα κύρια ονόματα.	John, Mary, Mr. Apostolis								
• Χώρες, επίθετα εθνικότητας, πόλεις,	Egypt, Egyptian, the United States,								
γεωγραφικά κλπ.	Mt. Imitos, Lake Prespa								
<ul> <li>Τήλοι.</li> </ul>	Mr, Mrs, Doctor, Professor, Master								
• Mńves, µépes, εορτές.	June, Monday, Easter Physics, Literature								
• Τμήματα σπουδών.									
• Ονόματα πλοίων.	M/V Panayia, S/S Dilos								
• Τίτλοι εργαζομένων όταν αναφερόμαστε σε	the Captain, the Mate (of my ship)								
συγκεκριμένα πρόσωπα.									

### Notes.

\_ \_ .....

....

### **PRACTICE** (Unit 40).

### *Exercises.*

(40.1) Rewrite and punctuate the sentences: (Capitals, commas, full stops, apostrophes, question marks).

1. dont remove the cover

2. hes master on the mv maria p



- 3. this is mr thomas hes an ab
- 4 mr andrews isnt a chief engineer
- 5 im mark simmons im a steward
- 6. is this an american vessel
- 7. there arent many ships in the harbour
- A: did you say the angela
   B: shes in hong kong now
- (40.2) Rewrite and punctuate the sentences: (Capitals, commas, full stops, apostrophes, question marks, colon)
- 1. what kinds of boats are there there are basically three kinds of boats sailing rowing and power boats a sailing-boat uses sails for her propulsion a rowing-boat oars and a power boat an engine.

2. an oar has three parts loom shaft and blade my friends boat has oars but it has sails too yet he doesnt sail very far because the boats small.

3. (Dialogue) customs officer are all these bags yours sir passenger yes they are all mine.





### **General Practice (36-40)**

#### 🗷 Exercises.

#### (41.1) Choose the right answer:

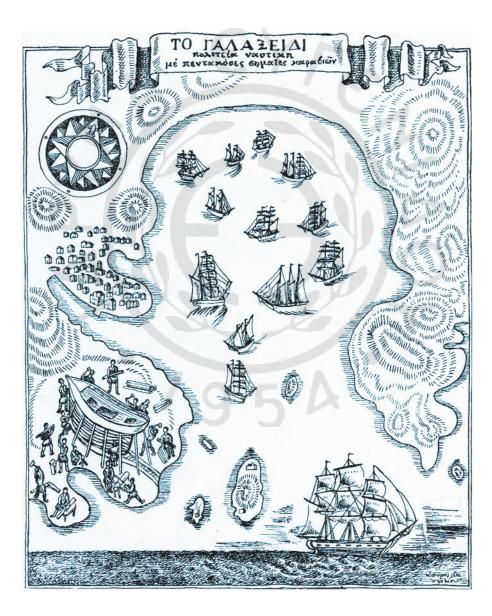
- 1. The amount of energy that a solar collector depends ..... its design. A. on B. at C. in
- "When does your watch begin?"" ...... 08.00."
   A. on B. in C. at
- Nothing serious happened ..... the Third Mate's shift.
   A. during B. by C. in
- I hope to finish this project ..... the Christmas holidays.
   A. on B. in C. over
- When the ship cleared the Channel, he came ..... the wheelhouse.
   A. out B. outside C. out of
- Big hovercrafts sail ..... the English Channel every day.
   A. across B. along C. towards
- 8. The passengers came ashore ..... the gangway. A. across B. along C. off
- 9. The angry sailor moved ..... the barman. A. through B. towards C. for

#### (41.2) Choose the right answer:

- The vessel arrived at the delta and then sailed ..... the river.
   A. through B. up C. round
- They sailed to the island, and then went up to the village .....
   A. by car B. by way C. the bus
- 3. The Engineer ..... the faulty pump and turned on the spare one. A. stood by B. switched in C. switched off



- 4. The ABs had to work quickly ..... accurately. A. and B because C. also
- 5. The sail was rescheduled ..... there was a storm out. A. where B. but C because
- 6. As there was an emergency the ship ...... Inousses.A. called at B. called out C. called on





## Some Communicative English (1): Meeting people

#### Επαφές και γνωριμίες με ανθρώπους.

#### 1. Χαιρετισμοί και αποχαιρετισμοί.

• Όταν χαιρετούμε κάποιον (τυπικά) λέμε:

Good morning, Good afternoon, Good evening, Goodnight (Μόνο αποχαιρετώντας). Επίσης (φιλικά):

Hello, Maria. Nice/Good to see you.	
How are you?	$\Rightarrow$ Very well, thank you.
	$\Rightarrow$ Fine, thanks. And you?

• Όταν αποχαιρετούμε κάποιον λέμε:

(Well,) I (really) must go/leave now. Good-bye. Επίσης:

It was very nice seeing you.	$\Rightarrow$ I enjoyed seeing you, too.
I hope to see you again.	$\Rightarrow$ I hope so, too.
See you tomorrow/soon.	$\Rightarrow$ See you.
Have a nice trip home.	
Goodnight. Have a good sleep.	$\Rightarrow$ Thank you. The same to you.

#### 2. Συστάσεις.

• Όταν συστήνουμε τον εαυτό μας ή κάποιον άλλο λέμε:

Can/May I introduce myself?	I'm Panos Fokas.
May/can I introduce my best friend?	This is Elli Fotiou.
I'd like to introduce my Mate and the Chief Engineer.	
Let me introduce you to Mr. Lellos.	

#### • Στις συστάσεις τα πρόσωπα λένε ο ένας στον άλλο:

How do you do?	$\Rightarrow$ How do you do?
Pleased/Happy to meet you.	$\Rightarrow$ Pleased to meet you, too.



# Some Communicative English (2): Telephoning

#### Ποώτη επαφή.

Αυτός που τηλεφωνεί δηλώνει την ταυτότητά του:

Hello! This is ... (Captain Bellios). Hello! This is Mrs Bellia speaking.

Στη συνέχεια αναγνωρίζει το πρόσωπο στην άλλη άχρη ή ζητά αυτόν που θέλει:

Is that (Miss James)? Þ	$\Rightarrow$ Yes, speaking.
Could I speak to (Master Takis)? Þ	$\Rightarrow$ May I ask who is calling, please?
I'd like to speak to Mr Tanenbaum	$\Rightarrow$ Who's calling/this, (please)?
	$\Rightarrow$ Hold the line, please.
	$\Rightarrow$ Hold on, please. Þ
	$\Rightarrow$ I'm sorry, Miss James isn't here. Þ
	$\Rightarrow$ I'm afraid Mr Takis isn't in at the moment.

Περαιτέρω δηλώνει το λόγο που τηλεφωνεί:

I'm calling about ... (the delay of receiving spare parts Nos. ...)

#### Μηνύματα.

Can I leave a message? Þ	$\Rightarrow$ Of course, please go ahead.	
Could you take a message?	$\Rightarrow$ Yes, of course.	
Can I speak to Secretary Jones?	⇒ I'm afraid she's in a meeting. Can I <b>take a</b> message?	
Could you ask him to call(Elias)?	$\Rightarrow$ What's your number, please?	
Could you tell him that I called?	$\Rightarrow$ Yes, certainly.	



### Some Communicative English (3): Invitations

#### Προσκλήσεις.

Đñüóêëçóç/Đñüôáóç	Áðï äï ÷Þ	
Would you join us for a swim? I'd like to invite you to the theatre. Why don't you have dinner with me. Let's do something on Saturday evening.	<ul> <li>⇒Thank you I would enjoy that.</li> <li>⇒Thank you. I'd love to come.</li> <li>⇒Thank you. I'd be delighted. (Also possible: I'll be delighted.)</li> </ul>	
Are you free?	$\Rightarrow$ Perhaps.	
	¢ ñí çóç	
Would you like to come for a walk with us.	$\Rightarrow$ Thanks a lot but I'm extremely tired and	
How about joining us for the party tonight? How would you like to join us for the cinema tonight?	<ul> <li>have an early appointment.</li> <li>⇒I'd love to but I'm afraid I can't.</li> <li>⇒Thank you so much but I've already made other arrangements.</li> </ul>	

### Αποχαιφετισμοί/ευχαφιστίες.

Áõôüò ðï õ åõ÷áñéóôåßãéá ôç öéëï î åí ßá ë Ýáé

Thank you for everything. We had a wonderful evening.

Thank you very much inviting us. It was really enjoyable.

Thank you for your hospitality. I really had a good time. I appreciate it very much.

Thanks a lot. It was great. I really had a great time.

Á<br/>õôuò ðĩ õ ðñu<br/>óö åñå ôç ö<br/> éëï î åí ßá á<br/> ðĩ êñ<br/>ß åôá é

I'm glad you liked it.

I'm happy you could come.

I'm happy you enjoyed yourself.



# Some Communicative English (4): Personal information/ Permission

### Αναζήτηση προσωπικών δεδομένων.

Ερωτήσεις	Πιθανές απαντήσεις	
What's your name?	My name's/I'm	
Where do you come from?	I come from Greece.	
Where do you live?	In Athens.	
What's your job? / What do you do?	I'm a teacher.	
Where do you work?	At the Merchant Marine Academies.	
What's your telephone number?	210 989 2230 (Two one zero nine eight nine,	
	double two three oh).	
How do you go to work?	I walk. On foot. By car. By bus/tram.	
Do you read newspapers and magazines?	Yes, I do./No, I don't.	
Are you interested in politics?	Yes I am./No, I'm not.	
Do you listen to the news?	If I get home early enough.	

#### Άδεια.

δεια.	
Αυτός που ζητά άδεια λέει:	Αυτός που δίδει άδεια λέει:
<b>Do you mind if</b> I play some music? <b>May I</b> sail your boat for a while? <b>Could I</b> use your bicycle?	No, not at all. No, please do. Yes, of course (you may). (Sure,) Go ahead. Yes, certainly.
	Όταν δεν δίδει άδεια, λέει: Well, I <i>am trying</i> to study, you know. Well, I'd rather you didn't. I'm sorry, but I'm riding it myself in a minute.



Some Communicative English (5): Meaning and Spelling/Help and directions

### Εφωτήσεις για την αγγλική.

What's this? What are these? This is/These are
What's this called in English, (please)? (It's called) It's a
Is this a cargo ship or a passenger ship? A
Is this a tugboat? Yes, (it is)/No, (it isn't).
What does pump mean? (It means) áí ôëſtá
How do you say <i>ðñï âëÞâá</i> in English? Dock.
How do you spell juggernaut? j-u- double g-e-r-n-a-u-t.
Could you speak more slowly please?
Could you write that down please?
Could you say that again (repeat that), please?

### Πώς ζητάμε και δίνουμε βοήθεια/οδηγίες.

Ερώτηση	Απόκριση
	Όταν γνωρίζουμε:
Excuse me. Where is the nearest chemist's,	22
please?	It's over there by the cinema.
Excuse me. Is there a bank near hear?	Go straight on. Then take the first on the left
	and then the second on the right. You can't
	miss it.
How far is it (please)?	About a hundred metres.
Thank you very much.	Not at all. You're welcome.
	Όταν δεν γνωρίζουμε:
	I'm sorry. I don't know.
	I'm sorry. I can't help you, I' m a stranger
	here, too.



# **Appendix One**

#### List of Irregular verbs.

- These are the most common irregular verbs.
- The students would be kindly advised to complete the meanings themselves.

INFINITIVE	PAST SIMPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	MEANING
be	was	been	είμαι
beat	beat	beaten	L
become	became	become	
begin	began	begun	
bend	bent	bent	
bet	bet	bet	
bite	bit	bitten	0
blow	blew	blown	
break	broke	broken	
bring	brought	brought	7
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast	
build	built	built	
burst	burst	burst	
buy	bought	bought	
catch	caught	caught	
choose	chose	chosen	
come	came	come	
cost	cost	cost	
creep	crept	crept	
cut	cut	cut	
deal	dealt	dealt	
dig	dug	dug	
do	did	done	



do	did	done	
draw	drew	drawn	
drink	drank	drunk	
drive	drove	driven	
eat	ate	eaten	
fall	fell	fallen	
feed	fed	fed	
feel	felt	felt	
fight	fought	fought	
find	found	found	
flee	fled	fled	
fly	flew	flown	
forbid	forbade	forbidden	
forget	forgot	forgotten	
forgive	forgave	forgiven	
freeze	froze	frozen	
get	got	got	
give	gave	given	
go	went	gone	
grow	grew	grown	
hang	hung	hung	
have	had	had	
hear	heard	heard	
hide	hid	hidden	
hit	hit	hit	
hold	held	held	
hurt	hurt	hurt	
keep	kept	kept	
kneel	knelt	knelt	
know	knew	known	
lay	laid	laid	
lead	led	led	
leave	left	left	
lend	lent	lent	
let	let	let	



lie	lay	lain	
light	lit	lit	
lose	lost	lost	
make	made	made	
mean	meant	meant	
meet	met	met	
pay	paid	paid	
put	put	put	
read	read /red/	read /red/	
ride	rode	ridden	
ring	rang	rung	
rise	rose	risen	
run	ran	run	
say	said	said	
see	saw	seen	
seek	sought	sought	
sell	sold	sold	
send	sent	sent	
set	set	set	
sew	sewed	sewn/sewed	
shake	shook	shaken	
shine	shone	shone	
shoot	shot	shot	
show	showed	shown/showed	
shrink	shrank	shrunk	
shut	shut	shut	
sing	sang	sung	
sink	sank	sunk	
sit	sat	sat/seated	
sleep	slept	slept	
slide	slid	slid	
speak	spoke	spoken	
spend	spent	spent	
spit	spat	spat	
split	split	split	



spread	spread	spread	
spring	sprang	sprung	
stand	stood	stood	
steal	stole	stolen	
stick	stuck	stuck	
sting	stung	stung	
stink	stank	stunk	
strike	struck	struck	
swear	swore	sworn	
sweep	swept	swept	
swim	swam	swum	
swing	swung	swung	
take	took	taken	
teach	taught	taught	
tear	tore	torn	
tell	told	told	
think	thought	thought	
throw	threw	thrown	
understand	understood	understood	$\sim$
wake	woke	woken	$\mathbf{O}$
wear	wore	worn	
weep	wept	wept	
win	won	won	
write	wrote	written	

#### **Notes:**

.....



# **Appendix Two**

#### **Countries and Nationalities.**

Country	Nationality	Country	Nationality
Albania	Albanian	Holland	Dutch
America (the USA)	American	Hungary	Hungarian
Argentina (the	Argentinean	India	Indian
Argentine)	Argentinean	Ireland	Irish
Australia	Australian	Israel	Israeli
Austria	Austrian	Italy	Italian
Belgium	Belgian	Japan	Japanese
Brazil	Brazilian	Lebanon (The)	Lebanese
Bulgaria	Bulgarian	Norway	Norwegian
Canada	Canadian	Poland	Polish
the Czech Republic	Czech	Portugal	Portuguese
China	Chinese	Romania	Romanian
Cyprus	Cypriot	Russia	Russian
Denmark	Danish	Scotland	Scottish
Finland	Finnish	Spain	Spanish
France	French	Sudan (The)	Sudanese
Germany	German	Sweden	Swedish
Great Britain (UK)	British	Switzerland	Swiss
Greece	Greek	Turkey	Turkish

#### Notes:

.....



# **Appendix Three**

#### Write the Greek equivalent next to the colours and shapes below:

• Colours.

Colours.	
red brown yellow green blue grey	purple orange pink black white auburn
Shapes.	

#### • Shapes.

square	 triangular	
rectangular	 circular	
conical	 oval	
hexagonal	 cylindrical	

#### **Notes:**

Notes:	1	<b>Q</b>	5		





# **Appendix Four: Glossary**

#### A Glossary of Maritime Terminology

#### Aa

AB (able-bodied seaman) (np): πτυχιούχος ναύτης abaft (adv) : προς την πρύμνη abandon (v) : εγκαταλείπω abandon ship: εγκαταλείψτε σκάφος **abate** (**v**) : κοπάζω abeam (adv) : κάθετα, από το πλάι absorb (v) : απορροφώ acceleration (n) : επιτάχυνση accident (n) : ατύχημα accidental (n) : τυχαίος accommodation (n) : διαμονή accordance (n) : συμφωνία acquisition (n) : απόκτηση activate (v) : δραστηριοποιώ action (n) : δράση, ενέργεια active (adj) : δραστήριος, ενεργός adapt (v) : προσαρμόζω adequate (adj) : επαρκής adjustment (n) : ούθμιση, διόρθωση adopt (v) : υιοθετώ adrift (adj/adv) : έρμαιο των κυμάτων adverse (adj) : δυσμενής, αντίθετος advertisement (n) : διαφήμιση, αγγελία aeroplane (n),  $\eta$  (airplane) : αεροπλάνο

aft (adj, adv) : προς την πούμνη, όπισθεν του πλοίου Afternoon watch (n): 12 - 4  $\mu$ . $\mu$ . (βλ. watch) ahead (adv) : εμπρός, πρόσω aid (v/n) : βοηθώ, βοήθεια air (n) :  $\alpha \epsilon \rho \alpha \zeta$ air-cooler (n) :  $\alpha$ εροψυχτήρας aircraft (n) : αεροσκάφος alarm (n) : συναγερμός alert (n) : επιφυλαχή, συναγεομός align (v) : ευθυγραμμώ alignment (n) : ευθυγράμμιση all-around light (n) : περίβλεπτος φανός allot (v) : ορίζω, διανέμω almanac (n) : ημερολόγιο alter (v) : αλλάζω, τροποποιώ altitude (n) : ύψος aluminium (n) : αλουμίνιο amidships/midships (adv) : στο μέσον του πλοίου anchor (n, v) : άγκυρα, αγκυροβολώ anchor light (n) : φανός αγκυροβολημένου πλοίου anemometer (n) : ανεμόμετρο angle (n) : γωνία, right angle : ορθή γωνία angler (np) : ψαράς με καλάμι και ορμίδι (πετονιά) apparatus (n) : συσκευή appearance (n) : εμφάνιση, φαινόμενο

apply for (v) : απευθύνομαι, κάνω αίτηση για (δουλειά) appliance (n) : συσκευή, εφαρμογή, μέσο **apprehension** (**n**) : φόβος, ανησυχία apprentice (n) : δόκιμος, μαθητευόμενος approach (v) : πλησιάζω, προσεγγίζω approaches (n) : πρόσγεια (ποντά στην ξηρά) approve of (v) : εγκρίνω aquarium (n) : ενυδρείο area (n) : εμβαδόν, έκταση, χώρος arm (n) : βραχίονας, μπράτσο ashore (adv) : στην ακτή, στην ξηρά, go ashore: αποβιβάζομαι aspect (n) :  $\dot{\alpha}\pi \partial \psi \eta$ ,  $\pi \lambda \epsilon \psi \partial \dot{\alpha}$ assemble (v) : συναρμολογώ, κν. μοντάρω assembly (n) : σύνδεση, συναρμολόγηση, συγκέντρωση, συνέλευση assist (v) :  $\beta \circ \eta \theta \omega$ assistance (n) : βοήθεια astern (adv) : προς την πούμνη astrolabe (n) : αστρολάβος (παλαιό αστρολαβικό όργανο) auxiliary (adj) : βοηθητικός availability (n) : διαθεσιμότητα

available (adj) : διαθέσιμος awning deck (n) : προφυλαγμένο (σκεπαστό) κατάστρωμα

### Bb

baggage (n) : αποσκευές **bait** (**n**) : δόλωμα bag (n) : σάκος bale (n) : δέμα εμπορευμάτων, μπάλα bale out (v) :  $\pi \acute{e} \phi \tau \omega \mu \epsilon \alpha \lambda \epsilon \xi \acute{t}$ πτωτο ballast (n) : έρμα, σαβούρα ballast pump (n) : αντλία έρματος band (n) : ταινία, λωρίδα bank (n) : όχθη, κάθισμα κωπηλάτη, σειρά (κωπηλατών, κουπιών) barge (n) : λέμβος, μαούνα barometer (n) : βαρόμετρο barrel (n) : βυτίο, βαρέλι battleship (n) : θωρηκτό bay (n) : κόλπος be at anchor (v) : είμαι αγκυροβολημένος (κν. αραγμένος) be in distress (v) : βρίσχομαι σε δύσκολη θέση, κινδυνεύω be out of sight of (v) : χάνομαι be within sight of (v) : φαίνομαι beach (n/v) : παραλία, αμμουδιά, προβαίνω σε προσγιάλωση, προσεγγίζω σε ομαλή παραλία για αποβίβαση ή φόρτωση, καθίζω σκάφος θεληματικά beacon (n) : υφαλοδείκτης, φανός **beak (n)** : αχρόπρωρο beam (n) : μέγιστο πλάτος πλοίου bearing (n) : αντιστοιχία, διόπτευση **Beaufort** (n) : Μπωφόρ

Beaufort wind scale (n) : άνεμοι σε κλίμακα Μπωφός

beforehand (adv) : προκαταβολικά, εκ των προτέρων benefit (n) : όφελος, κέρδος, πλεονέκτημα berg (n) : έκταση πάγων iceberg (n) :  $\pi\alpha\gamma\delta\beta$ ουνο berth (n/v) : κλίνη (κν. κουκέτα), καμπίνα πληρώματος, θέση πλευρίσεως πλοίου δίπλα σε αγκυροβολημένο, προσορμίζω με αυτόν τον τοόπο Bill of health or pratique (n) : υγειονομική πιστοποίηση Bill of lading (n) : φορτωτική blade (n) :  $\lambda \epsilon \pi i \delta \alpha$ blast (n) : σφύριγμα (σειρήνας) blizzard (n) : χιονοθύελλα **blow** (**v**) : φυσώ blue sky (n) : ηλιοφάνεια board (n) : σανίδι, on board: επιβιβασμένος, to go on board (v) : επιβιβάζομαι, επιβιβάζομαι βιαίως, επιβίβαση εκ μέρους των αρχών boat house : υπόστεγο λέμβου boatswain (bosun) (n): ναύκληρος (κν. λοστρόμος) **boil** (**v**) : βράζω **boiler** (n) :  $\lambda \hat{\epsilon} \beta \eta \tau \alpha \varsigma$ **Boilers and Machinery Sur**veyed (B & MS ) : λέβητες και μηχανές επιθεωρήθηκαν **Boilers surveyed** (**B.s**) :  $\lambda \hat{\varepsilon} \beta \eta$ τες επιθεωρήθηκαν booklet (n) : φυλλάδιο boom (n) : κέρκος (κν. μπού- $\mu\alpha$ ) **bosun** (n) :  $\beta\lambda\epsilon\pi\epsilon$  boatswain bottom (n) : βυθός, πυθμένας, τα ύφαλα του σκάφους bottle (n) : μπουκάλι bow (n) : πλώρη, πρώρα bowsprit (n) : πρόβολος ιστιοφόρου, (χν. μπαστούνι) brake horse power (bhp) : μέση πραγματική ιπποδύναμη, ισχύς πέδης

APPENDIX GLOSSARY

breadth (n) : πλάτος **break** (**v**) : σπάζω break out (v) : ξεσπώ (για φωτιά, κλπ) breakdown (n) : βλάβη breakwater (n) : χυματοθραύστης, μώλος breathing apparatus (n) : αναπνευστική συσκευή breeze (n) : αύρα, αεράχι **bridge** (**n**) : γέφυρα brief (adj) : σύντομος broadcast (n, v) : εκπομπή, εκπέμπω build (v) : ναυπηγώ, κτίζω **bulb** (**n**) : βολβός bulbous (adj) : βολβοειδής bulk cargo: χύδην φορτίο **bulk carrier** (**n**) : φορτηγό πλοίο που μεταφέρει χύδην φορτίο bulkhead (n) : διάφραγμα, φοακτή (κν. μπουλμές) bulkhead deck : ratástowua στεγανών bulletin (n) : δελτίο, αναχοινωθέν **bundle** (n) :  $\delta \xi \mu \alpha$ bunker (n/v) : αποθήκη γαιάνθρακα ή άλλου καυσίμου πλοίου, παραλαμβάνω καύσιμα bunkers (n) : καύσιμα κύριας μηχανής πλοίου bunkering (n) : παραλαβή καυσίμου, τροφοδοσία καυσίμων buoy (n) : σημαδούρα buoyancy (n) : άνωση, πλευστότητα burning (n) : καύση

### Cc

**cabin** (**n**) : καμπίνα, θάλαμος, κοιτώνας **cable** (**n**) : ναυτικό στάδιο (1 cable = 200 yards = 185 metres) **cadet** (**n**) : δόκιμος



call (v, n) : καλώ, επισκέπτομαι, προσεγγίζω, συνδρομή, κλήση to call at a port: προσεγγίζω λιμάνι callipers (n) : διαβήτης μετρήσεως σφαιρικών αντικειμένων calm (wind) (adj) : νηνεμία, άπνοια calm (n) : γαλήνη, άπνοια, νηνεμία camshaft (n) : εκκεντροφόρος άξονας, κνωδακοφόρος άτρακτος can (n) : δοχείο, τενεκές can opener (n) : ανοιχτήρι κονσέρβας canal (n) : τεχνητή διώουγα candidate (n) :  $\upsilon \pi o \psi \eta \phi \iota o \zeta$ cap (n) : κάλυμμα (κν. τάπα), πηλίκιο capable (adj) : ικανός capacity (n) : χωρητικότητα **cape** (**n**) : ακρωτήρι capsize (v) : αναποδογυρίζω captain (np) : πλοίαρχος carburettor (n) :  $\epsilon \xi \alpha \epsilon \rho \omega \tau \eta \rho \alpha \varsigma$ (ην. παρμπυρατέρ) car carrier (n) :  $\pi\lambda o (0 \pi o v) \mu \varepsilon$ ταφέρει αυτοχίνητα, οχηματαγωγό care (n) : φροντίδα cargo (n) : φορτίο πλοίου cargo hold : αμπάρι cargo-ship (n) : φορτηγό πλοίο cargo liner (n) : φορτηγό πλοίο γραμμής carriage (n) : μεταφορά, φορέας, μεταφορέας, πλοιοκτήτης, εφοπλιστής carton (n): χαρτόκουτο case (n) :  $\varkappa$   $\beta$ ώτιο,  $\varkappa$ ουτί cast (v) : ρίχνω casualty (n) : ατύχημα casualties τα θύματα ατυχήματος ή πολέμου catamaran (n) : καταμαράν catering (n): τροφοδοσία

catering department (n) : τμήμα τροφοδοσίας caution (n): προσοχή, πρόνοια celestial (adj): ουράνιος cement (n) : τσιμέντο central (adj) : κεντρικός centrifugal force (n) : φυγόκεντοη δύναμη, κεντρομόλος centrifugal pump (n) :  $\pi \epsilon \rho \iota$ στροφική αντλία centreline (n) : κεντρική γοαμμή certificate (n) : πιστοποιητικό Ship's register (n) : πιστοποιητικό νηολογήσεως του πλοίου, έγγραφο εθνικότητας Certificate of inspection (n) : πιστοποιητικό της ετήσιας επιθεωρήσεως του σκάφους, μηχανής και εξαρτισμού Certificate of pratique (n) : υγειονομική πιστοποίηση certification (n) : πιστοποίηση certify (v) : πιστοποιώ chamber (n) : θάλαμος channel (n) : πορθμός, δίαυλος chart (n,v) : χάρτης (ναυτικός, υδρογραφικός), χαρτογραφώ chart room (n) :  $\alpha(\theta \circ \upsilon \circ \alpha \circ \eta)$ θάλαμος χαρτών chemicals (n) :  $\chi\eta\mu\mu\lambda\epsilon\zeta$  ουσίες chief engineer (np) : πρώτος μηχανικός chief mate (np) : υποπλοίαρχος, ύπαρχος chief officer (np) : υποπλοίαοχος, ύπαρχος chief steward (np) : αρχιθαλαμηπόλος chivalry (n) : ιπποτισμός, ιπποσύνη chill (v) : παγώνω choose (v) : επιλέγω, διαλέγω chronometer (n) : χρονόμετρο clap (n) :  $\beta \rho ov \tau \eta$ classify (v) : κατατάσσω, ταξινομώ classified ads : μικρές αγγελί-

ες

clean ballast tank : δεξαμενή καθαρού έρματος clear (n) : σαφής, stay clear: μείνε σε ασφαλή απόσταση clear (v) : καθαρίζω, ελευθερώνω, απαλλάσσω clearance (n) : τελωνειακή διασάφιση, εκτελωνισμός, άδεια ασφάλειας, διάκενο, άδεια απόπλου clear the anchor (v) : ευπρεπίζω την άγχυρα, νετάρω **cliff** (**n**) : βράχος clothing (n) : ιματισμός, ενδύματα cloud (v) : συννεφιάζω cloudy (adj, n) : νεφελώδης,νέφωση, συννεφιά coal (n) : άνθρακας, κάρβουνο coast (n) : ακτή, παραλία, γιαλός coastal (adj) : παράκτιος, παοαλιαχός coastguard (n) : ακτοφυλακή coil (n) : σπείρα, περιέλιξη, πηνίο collide (v) : συγκρούομαι collision (n) : σύγκρουση **combustible** (adj) : καύσιμος combustion (n) :  $\alpha \nu \dot{\alpha} \phi \lambda \epsilon \xi \eta$ , καύση come to an anchor (v) : αγκυροβολώ command (n, v) :  $\delta i \alpha \tau \alpha \gamma \eta$ ,  $\delta i$ οίκηση, διατάσσω, κυβερνώ communication (n) : επικοινωνία **compact** (adj) : συμπαγής **compartment** (**n**) : διαμέρισμα **compass** (**n**) : πυξίδα competitive (adj) : ανταγωνιστικός complement (n, v) : όλο το πλήρωμα (αξιωματικοί και ναύτες), συμπληρώνω **compressed gas** : πεπιεσμένο αέριο **compression** (**n**) : συμπίεση



compressor (n) : συμπιεστής computation (n) : υπολογισμός condensed (adj) : συμπυκνωμένος confine (v) : περιορίζω conjuror (n) : ταχυδακτυλουργός **conspicuous** (adj) : περίβλεπτος, πασιφανής constant (adj) : σταθερός, αμετάβλητος constellation (n) : αστερισμός construct (v) : κατασκευάζω construction (n) : หατασκευή **contact** (**n**, **v**) : επαφή, έρχομαι/φέρνω σε επαφή contagious (adj) : μεταδοτικός contain (v) : περιέχω, περιλαμβάνω **container** (**n**) : δοχείο container ship (n) : ειδικό πλοίο μεταφοράς εμπορευματοχιβωτίων continuation (n) :  $\sigma v v \epsilon \gamma \epsilon i \alpha$ contribute (v) : συνεισφέοω, συντελώ control (v) : έλεγχος, under control: υπό έλεγχο **control station** (**n**) : σταθμός ελέγχου controllable pitch propeller (n): προπέλα ρυθμιζόμενου βήματος convert (v) : μετατρέπω conveyor belt (n) : ιμάντας μεταφοράς cook (n) : μάγειρας coolant (n) : ψυκτικό μέσο cooler (n) : συσκευή ψύξεως **cooling** (**n**) : ψύξη cooling pump (n) : αντλία ψύέεως **coordinate** (**n**) : συντεταγμένη copious (adj) : άφθονος correct (v) : διορθώνω corrosive (adj) : διαβρωτικός κάλυμμα, καλύπτω οωγμή, οαγίζω

course (n) :  $\pi \circ \rho \epsilon i \alpha$ **craft** (**n**) : πλοίο crane (n) : γερανός crankshaft (n) : στοοφαλοφόρος άξονας crate (n) : κιβώτιο, καφάσι crest (n) : κοουφή κύματος **crew** (**n**) : πλήρωμα cross (v) : διαπλέω crosswise (adj/adv) : σταυρωτά crown (n) : αγκώνας άγκυρας crude oil (n) : αχάθαρτο πετρέλαιο, αργό πετρέλαιο cruise ship (n) : κρουαζιερόπλοιο, περιηγητικό, τουριστικό πλοίο cruiser (n) : καταδρομικό, εύδρομο, χρουαζιερόπλοιο cubic metres : κυβικά μέτρα current (n) : ρεύμα curriculum vitae : βιογραφικό σημείωμα Customs House (n) : Τελωνείο customs officer (np) : τελωνειακός υπάλληλος cyclone (n) : κυκλώνας cylinder (n) : χύλινδρος cylinder head (n) : κεφαλή κυλίνδρου

### Dd

dairy produce (n) : γαλακτοκομικά προϊόντα damage (n) : καταστροφή, ζημιά damp (adj) : υγρός dead slow ahead : πρόσω πολύ αργά deadweight (n) : νεκρό βάρος deadweight tonnage (n) : χωρητικότητα νεκρού φορτίου (μέγιστη μεταφορική ικανότητα του πλοίου) deck (n) : κατάστρωμα

deck-hands (np) : (συνήθως πληθυντικός) προσωπικό καταστρώματος deck-officer (np) : αξιωματικός γέφυρας/καταστρώματος defective (adj) : ελαττωματικός **define** (**v**) : ορίζω degree (n) : βαθμός, μοίρα delay (v) : αναβάλλω, καθυστερώ deliberate (adj) : προμελετημένος, σκόπιμος deliver (v) : παραδίδω delivery (n) : παράδοση dense (adj) : πυκνός depict (v) : απεικονίζω **depth** (**n**) : βάθος derelict (n) : πλοίο εκούσια εγκαταλειμμένο καθώς και συντρίμμια που ξεβράστηκαν derrick (n) : φορτωτήρας designate (v) : ορίζω, προορίζω destination (n) :  $\pi \rho o \rho \sigma \rho \sigma \sigma \rho \sigma$ destroyer (n) : αντιτορπιλικό detect (v) : διαχρίνω, ανιχνεύω detection (n) : αναχάλυψη, ανίχνευση determine (v) : καθορίζω, προσδιορίζω deviate (v) : παρεκκλίνω, εκτρέπομαι devise (v) : επινοώ dew (n) : δρόσος dew point : σημείο δρόσου diesel (n) : πετρέλαιο καύσεως diesel engine (n) : μηχανή εσωτερικής καύσεως, συστήματος ντήζελ, πετρελαιοκινητήρας dimensions (n) : διαστάσεις diminish (v) : μειώνω, μειώνομαι discharge (n, v) : εκφόρτωση, εκροή, ξεφορτώνω dispersant (n) : διασκορπιστι-



κό υλικό displacement (n) : εκτόπισμα dispose of (v) : ξεφορτώνομαι distance (n) : απόσταση distinctive (adj) : χαρακτηριστικός, διακριτικός, ευδιάκριτος distinctly (adv) : καθαρά distress (n) : κίνδυνος, δύσκολη θέση, απόγνωση **distribute** (**v**) : διανέμω distributor (n) : διανομέας disturbance (n) : αναταραχή ditch (v) : προσθαλασσώνομαι **divide** (**v**) : διαιρώ dock (n) : ντόκος, αποβάθρα, δεξαμενή, δεξαμενίζω πλοίο (για επισκευές) donkeyman (n) : αρχιθερμαστής downpour (n) : νεροποντή, μπόρα **drag anchor** (**v**) : σύρω την άγκυρα draught/draft (n) : βύθισμα πλοίου dredge anchor (v) : σύρω την άγκυρα dredging operations : εργασίες εκβαθύνσεως drill (v) : τουπώ με τουπάνι drilling rig (n) : εξέδρα αντλήσεως πετρελαίου drizzle (n) : ψιλή βροχή, ψιχάλα dock (n/v) : δεξαμενή (κν. ντόκος), δεξαμενίζω dry dock (n) : μόνιμη δεξαμενή, floating dock (n) : πλωτή δεξαμενή docker (np) : φορτοεκφορτωτής, λιμενεργάτης double bottom (n) : διπύθμενα draft (n, adj) : πρόχειρο, συναλλαγματική drift (v/n) : παρασύρομαι, γίνομαι έρμαιο των χυμάτων, ταχύτητα ρεύματος (βλ. adrift) drop n/v) : σταγόνα, πτώση,

αφήνω να πέσει drop anchor (v) : ρίχνω άγκυρα (cast anchor) droplet (n) : σταγονίδιο drum (n) : βαρέλι dry-dock (n) : στεγανή δεξαμενή dry bulk (n) : ξηρό χύδην φορτίο dumping (n) : απόρριψη duty (n) : καθήκον, υπηρεσία, δασμός, φόρος (custom duty: τελωνειακός δασμός)

### Ee

east (adj, n) :  $\alpha \nu \alpha \tau \sigma \lambda \iota \varkappa \delta \varsigma$ , ανατολή, ανατολικός άνεμος, λεβάντες easterly (adj) : ανατολικός, εξ ανατολών, προς ανατολάς eccentric (n) : έκκεντοο echo sounder : ηχητικό βυθόμετρο **Effective Horse Power (EHP):** πραγματική ιπποδύναμη efficiency (n) : ικανότητα, αποτελεσματικότητα, αποδοτικότητα, απόδοση effectiveness (n) : αποτελεσματικότητα electric charge : ηλεκτρικό φορτίο embark (v) : επιβιβάζω **embarkation** (**n**) : επιβίβαση embody (v) : ενσωματώνω emergency (n) : έκτακτη ανάγκη emit (v) : εκπέμπω, αναδίνω en masse (adv) : μαζικά, ομαδικά encounter (v) : συναντώ, βρίσκω μπροστά μου engine room (n) : μηχανοστάσιο engine room telegraph (n) : τηλέγραφος μηχανοστασίου

enrol (v) : εγγράφω, εγγράφομαι ensure (v) : εξασφαλίζω, εγγυώμαι entertainer (n) : ο προσφέρων ψυχαγωγία, συντελεστής διασχεδάσεως environment (n) : περιβάλλον equal (adj) : ίσος Equator : Ισημερινός equipment : εξοπλισμός, εξαρτισμός erect (v, adj) : ανυψώνω, ανορθώνω, όρθιος escort (n/v) : συνοδεία, συνοδός, συνοδεύω estuary (n) : εκβολή ποταμού evaluate (v) : εκτιμώ, υπολογίζω **Evening watch :** 4-8µ.µ. evolve (v) : αναπτύσσω/ομαι, εξελίσσομαι exert (v) : ασκώ exhaust (n,v) : εξαντλώ, εξάγω, εξαγωγή, εξάτμιση exhaust valve (n) : βαλβίδα εξαγωγής expand (v) : εξαπλώνω/ομαι, διαστέλλω, expansion (n) : εξάπλωση επέκταση, διαστολή, εκτόνωση ατμού expansion tank (n) : δοχείο (τεπόζιτο) εκτονώσεως, επίσης expansion trunk expect (v) : αναμένω, προσδοĸώ experience (n) : πείρα, δοκιμάζω explore (v) : εξερευνώ explorer (n) :  $\epsilon \xi \epsilon \rho \epsilon \nu \nu \eta \tau \eta \zeta$ explosion (n) : έκρηξη explosive (adj, n) : εκοηκτικός, εκοηκτική ύλη extinguish (v) : σβήνω extinguisher (n) : πυροσβεστήρας eyesight (n) : όραση



### Ff

factor (n) : παράγοντας fairway (n) : δίαυλος, το βαθύτερο και πλωτό μέρος λιμένα/ποταμού/πορθμού κλπ fan (n) : ανεμιστήρας (ποχλίας, τροχός κλπ.) για παραγωγή ρεύματος αέρα fault (n) : ελάττωμα, σφάλμα fast (adj) : ταχύς, σταθερός, στερεωμένος fasten (v) : στερεώνω, προσδένω, μποτσάρω fathom (n) : μια οργιά, 1,828μ, δύο γυάρδες, έξι πόδια fender (n) : προφυλακτικό για κτυπήματα στα πλευρά (μπαλόνι, στρωμάτσα) ferry (n) :  $\pi \circ \rho \theta \mu \epsilon i \circ$ ferry-boat (n) :  $\varphi \notin \varphi \oplus \psi \pi$   $\sigma \tau$ , πορθμείο fertilizer (n) : λίπασμα filter (n,v) : φίλτρο, φιλτράρω, διυλίζω fire detection system : σύστημα ανιχνεύσεως πυρκαγιάς fire-drill (n) : άσκηση ετοιμότητας για πυρκαγιά fireman (n) : θερμαστής **First dog watch :** 4-6  $\pi$ .µ. ( $\beta\lambda$ . watch) **First watch :** 8-12 μ.μ. (βλ. watch) **First Mate (n) :** βλέπε Chief mate First Officer (n) : υποπλοίαρχος (κν. γραμματικός) fishing tackle (n) : αλιευτικά σύνεργα fishing vessel (n) : αλιευτικό σκάφος fit (adj,v) : κατάλληλος, άξιος, υγιής, ικανός, εξοπλίζω fitting (n): εφαρμογή, εξάρτημα fittings (n) : εξαρτισμός, βοηθητικές εγκαταστάσεις, εξαρτήματα

ναυαρχίδα flagstaff (n) : κοντάρι σημαίας flake (n) : νιφάδα (χιονιού) flammable (adj) : εύφλεκτος flare (n) : έντονο φως βραχείας διάρχειας, φωτοβολίδα flash (n, v) :  $\lambda \dot{\alpha} \mu \psi \eta$ ,  $\alpha v \alpha \lambda \alpha$ μπή, λάμπω, αστράφτω flash point (n) : σημείο αναφλέξεως flash of lightning : αστραπή flashing light : φάρος που αναλάμπει fleet (n) : στόλος flint (n) : πυρόλιθος float (v) : πλέω, επιπλέω floating-dock (n) : πλωτή δεξαμενή (για επισκευές πλοί- $\omega v$ ) flood (v,n) : πλημμυρίζω, κατακλύζω, πλημμύρα flotation (n) : πλευστότητα, επίπλευση **flour** (**n**) : αλεύοι fluent (adj) : ευφράδης, άνετος fluently (adv) : άνετα, με ευγέρεια fluke (n) : όνυξ, νύχι (άγκυ- $\rho\alpha\varsigma$ ) **foam** (**n**) : αφρός **fog** (**n**) : ομίγλη fog bank : πυχνή ομίχλη στην επιφάνεια της θάλασσας foggy (adj) : ομιχλώδης **force** (**n**) **:** δύναμη fore (adj, adv) :  $\pi \rho \delta \sigma \theta \rho \sigma$ , πρωραίος, εμπρός, μπροστά fore-and-aft (adv) : διαμήκης, από την πρώρη ως την πρύμνη forecast (n) : πρόγνωση καιοού, μετεωρολογικό δελτίο forecastle (n) : πρόστεγο foremast (n) : πρωραίος ιστός (κν. τουρκέτο) **forenoon watch** : βάρδια 8-12  $\pi.\mu.$  (βλ. watch) foresee (v) : προβλέπω

**flag** (**n**) : σημαία *flagship* (*n*) :

forward (adv) :  $\pi \rho \rho \sigma \tau \alpha \mu \pi \rho \rho \sigma$ foul anchor : μπλεγμένη άγκυρα, πιασμένη στο βυθό four-cycle diesel engine : τετράχρονος πετρελαιοκινητήοας frame (n, v) : πλαίσιο (κν. τελλάρο), νομέας, πλαισιώνω (κν. κορνιζάρω) freeboard (n) : έξαλα πλοίου, ψηλά freeze (v) : παγώνω, πήζω freight (n) : ναύλος freighter (n) : φορτηγό frequency (n) : συχνότητα fresh breeze (n) : άνεμος λαμπρός, 17-21 μιλίων fresh gale (n) : άνεμος σκληοός, ορμητικός fresh water pump (n) : αντλία πόσιμου νερού friction (n) : τριβή frigate (n) : πολεμικό πλοίο δρόμων (χν. φρεγάτα) fringe benefits : πρόσθετες παροχές (σε εργαζόμενους) front (n) : μέτωπο fuel (n) :  $\varkappa \alpha \dot{\upsilon} \sigma \iota u n \dot{\upsilon} \lambda n$ fuel oil : καύσιμο πετρελαίου, πετρέλαιο λεβήτων fuel consumption (n) : xataνάλωση καυσίμου fuel gas (n) : καυσαέριο full power (adv) : πάση δυνάμει full sail (n) : ιστιοφόρο με όλα τα πανιά ανοιχτά full (speed) ahead : πρόσω ολοταγώς full (speed) astern : ανάποδα ολοταχώς function  $(\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{v})$  :  $\lambda$ ειτουργία, λειτουργώ funnel (n) : καπνοδόχος, τσιμινιέρα

### Gg

gale (n) : θύελλα, θυελλώδης



άνεμος gale warning : αναγγελία θυελλωδών ανέμων galleon (n) : γαλέρα κινούμενη με πανιά galley (n) : μαγειρείο πλοίου, γαλέρα κινούμενη με κουπιά και πανιά gangway (n) : κινητή κλίμακα ή γέφυρα επί και αποβιβάσεως garbage (n) : σκουπίδια gas (n) : αέριο gas oil (n) : ελαφρό πετρέλαιο ντήζελ gasoline (n) :  $\beta \epsilon \nu \zeta i \nu \eta$ **gauge** (**n**, **v**) : όργανο μετρήσεως, μετρητής gear (n) : εξαρτήματα, σύστημα μοχλών, οδοντωτός τροχός bevel gear (n) : helical gear (n) : ελικοειδές γρανάζι spur gear (n) : worm gear (n): ατέρμων κοχλίας (σε εμπλοκή με οδοντωτό τροχό) **geared engine** : μηχανή με σύστημα οδοντωτών τροχών gear-wheel pump (n) : γραναζωτή αντλία general cargo (n) : γενικό φορτίο general cargo carrier (n) : φορτηγό πλοίο γενικού φορτίου generator (n) : γεννήτρια gentle breeze : λεπτός (άνεμος) geographic coordinates (n) : γεωγραφικές συντεταγμένες governor (n) : ουθμιστής gravity (n) : βαρύτητα grievance (n) : παράπονο greaser (n) :  $\lambda i \pi \alpha \nu \tau \eta \varsigma$ grain (n) : σιτηρά gross tonnage : ολική χωρητικότητα πλοίου guidance (n) : καθοδήγηση gust (n) : αιφνίδια και παροδική φιπή βίαιου ανέμου gyro compass (n) : γυφοσκοπική πυξίδα

### Hh

hack saw (n) : σιδηφοπφίονο **hail** (**n**) : χαλάζι half ahead (adv) : πρόσω ημιταγώς hamper (n) : παρεμποδίζω, ενοχλώ **handle** (**n**, **v**) : χε**ρούλι**, χειρίζομαι harbour (n) : λιμάνι harmful (adj) :  $\varepsilon \pi \iota \beta \lambda \alpha \beta \eta \varsigma$ hazard (n) : κίνδυνος haze (n) : αχλύς ξηρά, ελαφρά ομίχλη (ορατότητα μεγαλύτερη από 2 χιλιόμετρα) head (n,v) : πλώρη, κατευθύνομαι, κατευθύνω heap up (v) : συσσωρεύω hearing (n) : αχοή heat (n): θεομότητα, θέρμανση heave (v) : ανυψώ, έλκω heavy gale : ισχυρή θύελλα heavy swell, long : μαινόμενη, χοντρή φουρτούνα (βλ. swell) heavy swell, short : κλυδώνιο, μεγάλη φουρτούνα (βλ. swell) helm (n) : τιμόνι, πηδάλιο helmsman (np) : πηδαλιούχος, τιμονιέρης hinder (v) : παρακωλύω, εμποδίζω hoist (v) : ανυψώνω **hold** (n) : αμπάρι hook (n, v) : άγκιστρο, αρπάγη (κν. γάντζος) Horse Power (HP) : ιπποδύναμŋ hose (n) : σωλήνας, μάνικα, λάστιχο hull (n) : σκάφος, κουφάρι πλοίου, το σκαρί του πλοίου Hull and Machinery (H & M): σκάφος και μηχανή

humidity (n) : υγρασία (υδρατμοί στην ατμόσφαιρα) hurricane : τυφώνας, κυκλώνας, θύελλα με ανέμους άνω των 75 χμ. hovercraft (n) : ταχύπλοο σκάφος που γλιστρά πάνω από την επιφάνεια της θάλασσας hydrofoil (n) : υδροπτέρυγο πλοίο (κν. δελφίνι) Hydrographic Department : Υδρογραφική Υπηρεσία

### Ii

ice breaker (n) :  $\pi \alpha \gamma \circ \theta \circ \alpha \upsilon \sigma \tau_i$ хó icing (n) : επίπαγος, κρούστα πάγου identification (n) : αναγνώριση ταυτότητας, αναγνώριση, ταύτιση identify (v) : προσδιορίζω την ταυτότητα, αναγνωρίζω ignition (n) : ανάφλεξη imminent (adj) : επικείμενος, άμεσος impart (v) : μεταδίδω imply (v) : υπονοώ, συνεπάγομαι **in accordance with :** σύμφωνα με inboard motor (n) : εσωλέμβιος κινητήρας cp. outboard *motor* : εξωλέμβιος χινητήρας in sight : ορατό, που φαίνεται incapacitated (adj) : ανίκανος incident (n) : επεισόδιο **incinerator** (**n**) : κλίβανος αποτεφρώσεως include (v) : περιέχω, περιλαμβάνω indicated horse power (IHP) : ενδεικτική ιπποδύναμη indicator (n) : δείκτης, δυναμοδείκτης **inert material** (**n**) **:** αδρανές υλικό inflammable (adj) : εύφλεκτος



**inlet** (**n**) : είσοδος insomnia (n) : αϋπνία **inspection** (**n**) : επίσημη επιθεώρηση, έρευνα install (v) : εγκαθιστώ installation (n) : εγκατάσταση instrument (n) : όργανο intend (v) : σκοπεύω, σχεδιάζω, προτίθεμαι intention (n) : σκοπός, πρόθεσŋ interior (adj) : εσωτερικός internal (adj) : εσωτερικός **Internal Combustion Engine** (ICE) (n) : μηχανή εσωτερικής καύσεως, πετρελαιομηχανή interview (n) : συνέντευξη iron ore (n) : σιδηρομετάλλευμα irregularity (n) : ανωμαλία **island** (n) : νησί isle (n) : διάδρομος issue  $(\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{v})$  : έχδοση, εχδίδω **isthmus** (**n**) : ισθμός

### Jj

jack - knife (n) : σουγιάς jet (n) : προβολή, εκτόξευση νερού ή αερίου με ορμή jettison (n,v) : απόρριψη φορτίου με σκοπό τη σωτηρία του πλοίου, απορρίπτω κλπ. jetty (n) : προβλήτα (ξύλινη ή σιδερένια), μόλος κτιστός join (v) : συνδέω joint (n) : σύνδεση, ένωση

### Kk

keel (n) : καρίνα πλοίου knocking (n) : κτύπος knot (n) : κόμβος knowledgeable (adj) : γνώστης, ενήμερος

### Ll

labour (n) : δουλειά, κόπος ladder (n) : σκάλα φορητή, ανεμόσκαλα landmark (n) : χαρακτηριστικό σημείο στην ξηρά ορατό από τη θάλασσα (π.χ. κωδωνοστάσιο, ανεμόμυλος) lash (v) : δένω, μποτσάρω lathe (n,v) : τόρνος, τορνεύω latitude (n) : πλάτος launch (v) : καθελκύω launching (n) : καθέλκυση πλοίου lavatory (n) : τουαλέτα lay (v) : τοποθετώ, βάζω layer (n) : στρώμα law (n) : νόμος leads (n) : μέρη σκοινιού σύσπαστου (μεταξύ τροχίλων) **leaf** (**n**) : φύλλο leak (v,n) : διαρρέω, διαρροή leaky (adj) : που έχει διαρροές lee (adj, n) : υπήνεμος, υπήνεμος πλευρά length at (between) the perpendiculars : μήχος πλοίου μεταξύ των καθέτων length at the waterline : μήκος πλοίου κατά την ίσαλο γραμμή less (adj) : λιγότερος liable to (adj) : υποκείμενος lifeboat (n) : σωσίβια λέμβος lifejacket (n) : σωσίβιο γιλέχο lifesaver (n) : σωσίβιο light air : υποπνέων light breeze : ασθενής (άνεμος) light ship (n) : αγκυροβολημένο πλοίο εφοδιασμένο με φανό για διευκόλυνση της ναυσιπλοΐας lighthouse (n) : φάρος lightning (n) : αστραπή line (n) : γραμμή, γραμμή πλοίου liner (n) :  $\pi\lambda o i o \gamma \rho \alpha \mu \mu \eta \varsigma$ ,

cargo liner : φορτηγό γραμμής, passenger liner : επιβατηγό γραμμής liquefied natural gas (LNG) : υγροποιημένο φυσικό αέριο liquefied propane gas : vyooποιημένο αέριο προπανίου **liquid** (adj, n) : υγρός, υγρό list (n, v) : κατάλογος, κλίση πλοίου σε μια πλευρά, έχω κλίση Little Bear (Ursa Minor) (n) : Μικοή Άρκτος load (n, v) : φορτίο, φορτώνω load line (n) : γραμμή φορτώσεως Load Line Certificate (n) :  $\pi I$ στοποιητικό γραμμής φορτώσεως locally (adv) : τοπικά locate (v) : εντοπίζω (π.χ. βλάβη, τοποθεσία) location (n) : εντοπισμός, εξακοίβωση, τοποθεσία lock (n) : ανυψωτική δεξαμενή διώουγας log (n) : δρομόμετρο, ημερολόγιο πλοίου logbook (n) : ημερολόγιο πλοίου logged (adj, part) : καταχωρημένος στο ημερολόγιο longitude (n) : μήκος **look out** (v, n) : προσέχω, επιτηρώ, επιτήρηση (Keep a sharp look-out) lookout (n) : οπτήρας loudspeaker (n) : μεγάφωνο lounge (v, n) : πολυτελής αίθουσα, σαλόνι, καπνιστήριο **Low Pressure** (LP) : χαμηλή πίεση lower (v) : κατεβάζω, χαμηλώνω low swell, long : ευθαλασσία  $(\beta\lambda. \text{ swell})$ low swell, short : γαλήνη (μπονάτσα) (βλ. swell) lubricant (n) : λιπαντικό (υλιхó)



lubricate (v) : λιπαίνω **lubricating oil** : λάδι λιπάνσεως **lubrication** (**n**) : λίπανση **lubrication system :** σύστημα λιπάνσεως luggage (n) : αποσκευές

### Mm

machine (n) :  $\mu\eta\chi\alpha\nu\eta$ machine gun (n) : πολυβόλο Machinery Certificate (MC) : πιστοποιητικό επιθεωρήσεως μηχανών machinery space operations : εργασίες/λειτουργίες μηχανοστασίου **magnetic compass** : μαγνητική πυξίδα maiden voyage (n) :  $\pi \alpha \rho \theta \epsilon \nu \iota$ κό ταξίδι main mast (n) : κύριος ιστός, το μεγάλο κατάρτι, το πρώτο διστήλου, δεύτερο τριστήλου ιστιοφόρου maintain (v) : συντηρώ, διατηοώ σε καλή κατάσταση maize (n) : καλαμπόκι, αραβόσιτος malfunction (n) : δυσλειτουογία, βλάβη man (n,v) : άνδρας, επανδρώνω **manned** (part, adj) : επανδρωμένος, *unmanned* : μη επανδρωμένος management (n) : διεύθυνση, διαχείριση manifest (n) : δηλωτικό φορτίου manifold (n) : σωλήνας, αγωγός, συλλέκτης, συγκρότημα σωληνώσεων, κιβώτιο διανομής manoeuvre (v, n) : κάνω ελιγμούς (μανούβρες), χειρισμός,

ελιγμός, μανούβρα

**manoeuvring** (**n**) : ελιγμός, εκτέλεση **manoeuvrability** (n): ευελιξία, άνεση στους χειρισμούς και ελιγμούς manual (n) : εγχειρίδιο marine (adj, n) : θαλάσσιος, ναυτικός, ναυτικό mariner (n) : ναυτικός, θαλασσινός marital status (n) : οικογενειαχή κατάσταση maritime (adj) : ναυτικός mark (n) : σημείο mast (n) : ιστός (χν. χατάρτι) master (n) :  $\pi \lambda o (\alpha o \chi o \zeta)$ masthead light (n) : εφίστιος φανός mate (np) First', Second', Third': Πρώτος, δεύτερος, τρίτος πλοίαρχος Mayday : το διεθνές σήμα ραδιοτηλεφωνίας εκπεμπόμενο από πλοίο ή αεροσκάφος σε κίνδυνο (από τη γαλλική λέξη "m'aidez" βοηθήστε με) **Mean Effective Pressure** (ΜΕΡ) : μέση πραγματική πίε- $\sigma\eta$ measure (v) :  $\mu\epsilon\tau\rho\omega$ measurement (n) : καταμέτοηση (πληθ.) : διαστάσεις **Mechanical Engineer (ME) :** μηχανολόγος, μηχανικός medical (adj) : ιατρικός merchant ship : εμπορικό πλοίο mesh (n) : εμπλοκή γραναζιών, διχτυωτό, πλέγμα message (n) : μήνυμα meticulously (adv) : σχολαστικά Middle watch : μεσάνυχτα ως 4 π.μ. ( $\beta\lambda$ . watch) midships (n) : το μέσο του πλοίου military service (n) : στρατιωτική θητεία millibars (n) : χιλιοστόβαρο,

μιλλιμπάρ minus (adv) : μείον minute (n) : λεπτό της ώρας, πρώτο λεπτό της μοίρας **misfire** (v) :  $(\gamma_{1\alpha} \mu_{1\gamma} \alpha_{2\gamma} \gamma_{1\gamma}) \delta_{\epsilon \nu}$ παίονω εμπρός **missile** (**n**) :  $\beta\lambda\eta\mu\alpha$ missing (adj) : αγνοούμενος mist (n) : αχλύς υγρή, ελαφρά ομίχλη (ορατότητα 1-2 χιλιόμετοα) **mixture** (**n**) : μείγμα mizzen-mast (n) : ο τρίτος ιστός τριστήλου ή τετραστήλου ιστιοφόρου **moderate** (adj) : μέτριος moderate breeze : μέτριος (άνεμος) moderate gale : σφοδρός (άνεμος) moderate swell, average length : σάλος, τριχυμία (βλ. swell) moderate swell, long : επίσαλος, φουρτούνα (βλ. swell) moderate swell, short : χυματισμός (βλ. swell) modulation (n) : διαμόρφωση monitor (v) : παρακολουθώ, ελέγχω moor (v) :  $oom(\zeta \omega), \pi oom(\delta \varepsilon)$ τώ, αγκυροβολώ με δύο άγκυ-<u></u> 239 **Morning watch :** 4-8  $\pi$ .µ. ( $\beta\lambda$ . watch) Morse code : κώδικας σημάτων Μορς motor (n, v) :  $\varkappa i \nu \eta \tau \eta \rho \alpha \varsigma$ , odyγώ αυτοκίνητο **Motor Vessel (MV)** : πλοίο με μηχανές εσωτερικής καύσεως moulded breadth (mld) : εσωτερικό μέγιστο πλάτος **moulded depth (mld)** : μέγιστο βάθος πλοίου mouth (n) : εκβολή ποταμού multi-deck (adj) : πολλών καταστρωμάτων multiply (v) : πολλαπλασιάζω

 multipurpose (adj) : πολλα 

 πλών χρήσεων

 must (n) : κάτι υποχρεωτικό

 mutiny (n) : ανταρσία

### Nn

naked (adj) : γυμνός **naptha** (n) :  $v \dot{\alpha} \phi \theta \alpha$ nationality (n) : εθνικότητα nautical (adj) : ναυτικός nautical tables : ναυτικοί πίνακες naval (adj) : ναυτικός **navigable** (adj) : πλώιμος, πλωτός, πλευστός navigable channel (n) : δίαυλος ναυσιπλοΐας navigate (v) : ναυσιπλοώ, πλέω, διαπλέω **navigation** (n) : ναυσιπλοΐα navigation/navigational bridge : γέφυρα ναυσιπλοΐας navigator (n) : αξιωματικός πορείας πλοίου near (adv) : πλησιάζω near gale : σφοδρός (άνεμος) **negligent** (adj) : αμελής, απρόσεκτος **net** (**n**) : δίχτυ net tonnage : καθαρή χωρητικότητα πλοίου **New Engines and Boilers** (Ν.Ε. & Β) : καινούργιες μηχανές και λέβητες **nil** (**n**) : μηδέν **north** (adj, n) : βορεινός, βορράς, βοριάς, τραμουντάνα northeast (adj, n) : βορειανατολικός, βορειανατολικός άνεμος, γρέγος northwest (adj, n) : βορειοδυτικός, βορειοδυτικός άνεμος, μαΐστοος notation (n) : συμβολική παράσταση notice (n) : αγγελία, ανακοίνωση

Notices to Mariners : αγγελίες προς ναυτιλλομένους notification (n) : ειδοποίηση, αναγγελία, ανακοίνωση novel craft (n) : σκάφος καινούργιας τεχνολογίας nozzle (n) : προστόμιο, ακροφύσιο

### 00

oar (n) : κουπί object (n) : αντικείμενο obscured : κουμμένος, συγκαλυμμένος observe (v) : παρατηρώ obstruct (v) : εμποδίζω, παρενοχλώ obstruction (n) : εμπόδιο ocean (n) : ωκεανός odour (n) : οσμή offshore (adj/adv) : πέραν των ακτών, κοντά στις ακτές officer (n) : αξιωματικός official (adj) : επίσημος official log (n) : ημερολόγιο του πλοιάρχου, ημερολόγιο γέφυρας oil filtering system : σύστημα φίλτρου λαδιού oil record book : βιβλίο πετρελαίου oil slick (n) : πετρελαιοκηλίδα oil spill (n) : πετρελαιοκηλίδα operation (n): χειρισμός, λειτουργία, επιχείρηση operating costs : λειτουργικά έξοδα outboard motor (n) : εξωλέμβιος κινητήρας **outlet** (**n**) : έξοδος outlook (n) :  $\pi \rho \delta \beta \lambda \epsilon \psi \eta$ output (n) : απόδοση, παραγωγή (μηχανής) overall (adj) : ολικός overall length : συνολικό μήκος πλοίου overboard (adj) : στη θάλασ-



σα, από το πλοίο, πτώση από το πλοίο στη θάλασσα overcast (adj) : συννεφιασμένος, νεφελώδης overdue (adj) : παθυστεφημένος overhang (v) : προεξέχω, επικρέμομαι overhaul (v) : εξετάζω, επιθεωρώ (π.χ. μηχανές) λεπτομερώς overtake (v) : προσπερνώ

### Pp

pack (v) : πακετάρω paperwork (n) : γραφική εργασία parachute (n) : αλεξίπτωτο paramount (adj) : ανώτατος, ύψιστης σημασίας particles (n) : κομματάκια, μόοια passage (n) : εισιτήριο θαλασσινού ταξιδιού, διάβαση, δίοδος, διάπλους **passenger** (**np**) : επιβάτης passenger-ship/liner (n) : επιβατηγό πλοίο patch (n) : μικοό κομμάτι (ομίχλης) patrol boat : περιπολικό πλοίο, ακταιωρός peninsula (n) : χερσόνησος per cent : τοις εκατό **performance** (**n**) : εκτέλεση, επίδοση personnel (n) : προσωπικό pertain (v) : ανήκω, σχετίζομαι **petrol** (**n**) : βενζίνηpetty officer (n) : υπαξιωματιхóс physically (adv) : σωματικά **pilot** (**n**) : πιλότος pilot boat : πλοηγικό πλοίο (πιλοτιέρα) pipe (n) : χάλκινος σωλήνας,



αγωγός pipeline (n) : αγωγός διασυνδέσεως, κανάλι in the pipeline: σε εξέλιξη **piston** (**n**) : έμβολο piston stroke : διαδρομή εμβόλου pitch  $(\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{v})$  :  $\beta \eta \mu \alpha \epsilon \lambda \kappa \alpha \varsigma$ , βήμα κοχλία, σκαμπανεβάζω plain (adj) : απλός **plank** (**n**) : σανίδα plant (n) : εγκατάσταση (μηχανών κλπ), μηχανήματα plastics (n) : πλαστικές ύλες plot (v) : αποτυπώνω στο χάρτη το στίγμα του πλοίου plunger (n) : έμβολο βυθίσεως plug (n) : βύσμα, ρευματολήπτης plus (adv) : ouv poison (n) : δηλητήριο poisonous (adj) : δηλητηριώδης pollute (v) : ουπαίνω polluter (n) :  $\rho v \pi a v \tau \eta \varsigma$ pole (n) : κοντάρι, πόλος pollution (n) : μόλυνση poop (n) : επίστεγο (υπερκατασκευή στην πούμνη του πλοίου) poor (visibility) (adj) : μικρή, κακή (ορατότητα) **populations** (**n**) : λαοί port (adj,adv) : αριστερός, αριστερά port (n) : αριστερή πλευρά του πλοίου, λιμάνι to put in at port: εισπλέω σε λιμάνι, προσοομίζομαι port bow : αριστερή πλευρά πλοίου port light : αριστερός πλευρικός φανός **portable** (adj) : φορητός position (n) : θέση, στίγμα power (n) : ισχύς, δύναμη (ηλεκτρική) ενέργεια **power boat** (**n**) : ελικοκίνητο σκάφος

practicable (adj) : εφαρμόσιμος **practice** (n) : πρακτική **precaution** (**n**) : προφύλαξη, πρόνοια precede (v) : προηγούμαι **precise** (adj) : ακριβής prefabricate (v) : προκατασκευάζω **pressure** (**n**) : πίεση presumably (adv) :  $\pi \iota \theta \alpha v \omega \zeta$ , ενδεχομένως prevent (v) : εμποδίζω, προλαμβάνω, αποτρέπω **probable** (adj) : πιθανώς proceed (v) : προχωρώ, πλέω, συνεχίζω την πορεία procedure (n) : διαδικασία prohibit (v) : απαγορεύω promenade (n) : περίπατος promenade deck (n) : κατάστρωμα περιπάτου (επιβατηγού) **prominent** (adj) : περίβλεπτος, προεξέχων promenade deck (n) : κατάστοωμα περιπάτου επιβατηγού promotion (n) :  $\pi \rho \sigma \alpha \gamma \omega \gamma \eta$ prompt (adj) : ταχύς, άμεσος promptly (adv) : αμέσως, γρήγορα propeller (n) : έλικας, προπέλα **propeller shaft** (**n**) : άξονας έλικας property (n) : ιδιότητα, ιδιοκτησία propulsion (n) : προώθηση, πρόωση **propulsive** (adj) : προωθητικóς prospective (adj) : μελλοντικός, πιθανός protect (v) : προστατεύω, προφυλάσσω protective (adj) : προστατευτικός provide (v) : παρέχω **provisions** (n) : προμήθειες,

διατάξεις νόμου, προβλέψεις prow (n) : πλώρη, πρώρα pshychrometer (n) : ψυχρόμετρο, υγρόμετρο publication (n) : έκδοση, δημοσίευμα pump (n) : αντλία suction pump (n) : αντλία αναρροφήσεως pumping (n) : άντληση pumpman (n) : αντλιωρός purser (n) : λογιστής πλοίου

### Qq

quadrant (n) : πλωτικός τετράς (παλιό ναυτικό όργανο που το χρησιμοποιούσαν για τη μέτρηση του ύψους των ουρανίων σωμάτων μέχρι 90°) qualification (n) : προσόν quarter (n) : το στρογγυλό τμήμα του πλοίου εκατέρωθεν της πούμνης, ισχύον, τέταρτο πουμναίο τμήμα ανώτερου καταστρώματος quarter deck (n) : πρυμναίο τμήμα του ανώτερου καταστρώματος quarters (n) : διαμερίσματα (πληρώματος, αξιωματικών, επιβατών) quell (v) : καλμάρω, κατευνάζω, καταπνίγω quay (n) : αποβάθρα επιβατών και εμπορευμάτων, μουράγιο quotation (n) : προσφερόμενη τιμή quote (v) : προσφέρω τιμή, επαναλαμβάνω αυτολεξεί (σε εισαγωγικά) quotient (n) : πηλίκο



### Rr

**radar** (**n**) : ραντάρ radar reflector (n) : ανακλαστήρας ραντάρ radio (n) : ασύρματος radio officer (n) : ασυρματιστής radio room (n) : θάλαμος ασυρμάτου, σταθμός radio telephony : ασύρματος τηλεφωνία rags (n) : κουρέλια καθαρισμού railings (n) :  $\pi \rho o \sigma \tau a \tau \epsilon v \tau i \varkappa \dot{\alpha}$ κιγκλιδώματα **rain** (**n**) : βροχή rainfall (n) : βροχόπτωση ram (v) : εμβολίζω range (n) : εμβέλεια, ακτίνα, πεδίο, διακύμανση, κλίμακα **rank** (**n**) : βαθμός rate (n,v) : αναλογία, μέσος όρος, τιμή, διατιμώ, ταξινομώ ration (n) : μερίδα, σιτηρέσιο rear (adj) : οπίσθιος receptable (n) : δοχείο receiver (n) : δέκτης (ασυρμάτου), παραλήπτης reception facilities : ευκολίες υποδοχής ξηράς reciprocating (adj) : παλινδρομικός recommendation (n) : σύσταση, υπόδειξη reduce (v) : ελαττώνω, μειώνω reef (n) : σκόπελος **reference** (**n**) : σύσταση refined products : διυλισμένα, καθαρισμένα προϊόντα refrigerated cargo : κατεψυγμένο φορτίο regard, with regard to : άποψη, σε σχέση με, από την άποψn regulation (n) : κανονισμός relative (adj) : σχετικός relative velocity : σχετική ταχύτητα

reliable (adj) : αξιόπιστος remedy (n,v) : διόρθωση (βλάβης), διορθώνω remote (adj) : απομαχουσμένος **remuneration** (**n**) : αμοιβή, αποζημίωση, πληρωμή repair (v, n) : επισκευάζω, επισκευή. under repair : για επισκευή **representative** (adj) : αντιποοσωπευτικός requirement (n) : απαίτηση, ανάγκη, προϋπόθεση rescue (v, n) : σώζω, διασώζω, σωτηρία, διάσωση research (n): έρευνα resistance (n) : avtíotaon resources (n) : πόροι, μέσα, πηγές respectively (adj) : αντίστοιχα restricted : περιορισμένος retard (v) : επιβραδύνω revolution (n) : στροφή, περιστροφή revolutions per minute (rpm): (περι)στροφές ανά λεπτό rig (v) : εξαρτίζω πλοίο, αρματώνω (πλοίο), εξοπλίζω, τοποθετώ ring (n) : δαχτύλιος, ανέλο, κουλούοι ripple (n) : ελαφοός κυματισμός της θάλασσας, ουτίδωση risk (n) : κίνδυνος, ρίσκο river (n) : ποταμός rod (n) : διωστήρας, ράβδος, connecting rod (n) : διωστήρας, βάκτρο εμβόλου **rocker** (**n**) : τόξο rocker arm (n) : ζύγωθοο, μοχλοβραχίονας κινήσεως βαλβίδας (κν. κοκοράκι) roll (v) : κυλίω, κυλίομαι, μποτζάρω **roll-call** (n,) : κλήση για συγκέντρωση, καλώ σε σύναξη rolls of steel : ρόλοι ελασμάτων χάλυβα

rope (n) : σχοινί rotary (adj) : περιστροφικός rotate (v) : περιστρέφω/ομαι γύρω από άξονα rotor (n) : στροφείο (χν. ρότορας) **rough** (adj) : κυματώδης (θάλασσα), τραχύς, ακατέργαστος, σκληρός, ζόρικος (καιρός) θυελλώδης, π.χ. the sea is rough/calm row (v, n) : σειρά, κωπηλατώ row-boat (n) : κωπήλατη βάοκα rowlocks (n) : δίχρανος σχαρμός rudder (n) : πηδάλιο rubber (n) : ελαστικό, καουτσούκ rudder tiller(n) : οίαξ (κν. λαγουδέρα) run (v) : λειτουργώ, πρατώ σε λειτουργία run aground (v) : εξοκείλλω, προσαράσσω run into danger : κινδυνεύω running (n) : λειτουργία μηχανής

#### Ss

sack (n) : σάκος safety (n) : ασφάλεια **sail** (**n**, **v**) : ιστίο, πανί sailing boat : ιστιοφόρο sailor (np) : ναύτης, ναυτικός sailing-ship : ιστιοφόρο πλοίο salary (n) : μισθός, αποδοχές saloon (n) : αίθουσα, σαλόνι πλοίου salvage (n,v) : διάσωση πλοίου, επιθαλάσσια αρωγή sanitation (n) : υγιεινή, απογέτευση satellite (n) : δορυφόρος **scale** (**n**) : κλίμακα scavenge (v) : σαρώνω, καθαοίζω



scavenge/scavenging air : αέρας σαρώσεως (διά του οποίου καθαρίζονται από τα καυσαέρια οι κύλινδροι των μηχανών εσωτερικής καύσεως) scavenge pump : αντλία σαρώσεως schedule (n) : δρομολόγιο πλοίου screw (n,v) : βίδα, βιδώνω screwdriver (n) : κατσαβίδι scrub (v) : τρίβω, καθαρίζω, ξύνω με ψήκτρα scull (n) : μικρό κουπί sea (n) : θάλασσα seagull (n) : γλάρος sea like a mirror : γαλήνη, θάλασσα λάδι, μπονάτσα sea trial (n) : δοχιμή νεότευκτου πλοίου seaman (np) : ναυτικός seamark (n) : φάρος, σημαδούρα, υφαλοδείκτης κλπ, που χρησιμεύει στην καθοδήγηση των ναυτιλλομένων search (v, n) : ερευνώ, έρευνα Second dog watch :  $6-8\mu.\mu.$  ( $\beta\lambda$ . watch) second mate (np) : δεύτερος αξιωματικός second officer (n) : 2ος πλοίαρχος, ανθυποπλοίαρχος segregated ballast : διαχωρισμένο έρμα segregated ballast tank : δεξαμενή διαχωρισμένου έρματος seismic (adj) : σεισμικός senior (adj) : ανώτερος sextant (n) :  $\epsilon \xi \dot{\alpha} v \tau \alpha \zeta$ shackle (n) : αγκύλιο αλυσίδας άγκυρας, κλειδί, τρόπος μετρήσεως βάθους (5 shackles of water) **shaft** (**n**) : άξονας **shaft horse power (shp)** : αξονική ιπποδύναμη shallow (adj) : οηχός shank (n) : άτρακτος, αδράχτι

**shed** (**n**) : υπόστεγο shift (n, v) : βάρδια, μετατόπιση, μετατοπίζω shifting (n) : μετατόπιση φορτίου **ship** (**n**, **v**) : πλοίο, φορτώνω, επιβιβάζω, a good ship: ασφαλές πλοίο shipbuilding (n) : ναυπήγηση, ναυπηγική shipbuilding yard (n) : ναυπηγείο, καρνάγιο shipper (n) : φορτωτής shipping (n) : ναυσιπλοΐα, ναυτιλία ship's articles (n) : συμφωνητικό ναυτολογήσεως του πληρώματος, ναυτολόγιο shoal (n) :  $\dot{\upsilon}\varphi\alpha\lambda$ oc shoot (v) : ανιχνεύω (βλάβη σε μηχανή) shore (n) : ακτή, παραλία shower (n) :  $\mu\pi\delta\rho\alpha$ ,  $\delta\nu\nu\alpha\tau\eta$ βροχή μικρής διάρκειας sight  $(\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{v})$ :  $\theta \in \alpha$ ,  $\delta \rho \alpha \sigma \eta$ ,  $\alpha \xi \iota \rho$ θέατο, βλέπω signal  $(\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{v})$  :  $\sigma \eta \mu \alpha i \nu \omega$ significant (adj) : σημαντικός silence period : περίοδος σιγής sink (v) : βυθίζομαι, βυθίζω, βουλιάζω size (n) :  $\mu$ έγεθος skimmer (n) : σύστημα συλλογής υγρού skipper (n) : πλοίαρχος μικρού εμπορικού σκάφους sky partly clouded : μερική νέφωση sleet (n) : χιονόνερο slip (v) : γλιστρώ, πέφτω slip anchor (v) : αφήνω την αλυσίδα της άγχυρας να πέσει στη θάλασσα, μολάρω slipway (n) : ναυπηγική κλίνη, νεώλχιο slow ahead : πρόσω ήρεμα sludge (n) : λάσπη, κατακάθι υγρών

sludges (n) : βαριά πετρελαιοειδή κατάλοιπα **software** (**n**) : λογισμικό solid (adj, n) : στερεός, στερεó. sonar : ηλεκτρονική συσκευή εντοπισμού θέσεως υποβουχίων, καταδυομένων αντικειμένων source (n) :  $\pi\eta\gamma\eta$ **south** (adj, n) : νότιος, νότος, νοτιάς, όστρια southeast (adj, n) : νοτιανατολικός, νοτιανατολικός άνεμος, σιρόκος southwest (adj,n) : νοτιοδυτικός, νοτιοδυτικός άνεμος, γαρμπής **space** (**n**) : χώρος spanner (n) : κοχλιοστρόφειο, κλειδί γαλλικό spark (n) :  $\sigma \pi i \nu \theta \eta \rho \alpha \zeta$ spark plug (n) : σπινθηριστής (κν. μπουζί) **special purpose ship** : πλοίο κατασκευασμένο για ειδικό σκοπό **speed** (**n**) : ταχύτητα speed service : υπηρεσιακή ταχύτητα, η κανονική μέση ταχύτητα του πλοίου φορτωμένου μέχοι της ισάλου γραμμής, με συνήθη καιρό και με τις μηχανές που λειτουργούν με οικονομική ταχύτητα **spill** (**v**) : χύνω, χύνομαι **spillage** (**n**) : χύσιμο spiral (adj) :  $\sigma\pi\epsilon\iota \rho \sigma\epsilon\iota \delta\eta \varsigma$ ,  $\epsilon\lambda\iota$ κοειδής spontaneous (adj) : αυθόρμητος spontaneous combustion : avτανάφλεξη spontaneously (adv) : αυθόρμητα spray (n, v) : ψεκασμός, ψεκάζω spring (n) : ελατήριο sprinkler (n) : εκτοξευτής νεοού



squall (n) : οιπαίος άνεμος square metres or meters : TEτραγωνικά μέτρα stable (adj) : σταθερός, ευσταθής stabilizer (n) : σταθεροποιητής stability (n) : σταθερότητα, ευστάθεια starboard (n) : δεξιά, η δεξιά πλευρά πλοίου starboard light : δεξιός πλευοικός φανός **state** (**n**) : κατάσταση state of sea : κατάσταση θαλάσσης (0 Beaufort) : γαλήνη (1 Beaufort) : γαλήνη (2 Beaufort) : ήǫεμη (3 Beaufort) : λίγο ταραγμένη (4 Beaufort) : λίγο ταραγμένη έως ταραγμένη (5 Beaufort) : ταραγμένη (6 Beaufort) : κυματώδης (7 Beaufort) : κυματώδης έως πολύ κυματώδης (8 Beaufort) : πολύ κυματώδης έως τριχυμιώδης (9 Beaufort) : τριχυμιώδης (10 Beaufort) : πολύ τρικυμιώδης (11-12 Beaufort) : μαινόμενη **steam** (**n**) : ατμός steamer (n) : ατμόπλοιο steamship (n) : ατμόπλοιο steel (n) : χάλυβας, ατσάλι steer (v) : πηδαλιουχώ, διευθύνω την πορεία του πλοίου, κυβερνώ steering (n) : πηδαλιουχία, τιμονιάρισμα stem (n) : στείρα (ποράπι της πλώρης) stern (n) : πούμη, πούμνη stern light : φανός κορώνης, φανός πούμνης stern-post (n) : ποδόστημα

steward (np m), stewardess (np f) : θαλαμηπόλος, καμαρώτος stock (n) : στύπος άγκυρας, τσίπος stock (v, n) : εφοδιάζω, δημιουργώ απόθεμα, απόθεμα stopper pin (n) : ανασχετήρας storm (n) : σφοδρή θύελλα stormy (adj) : θυελλώδης stow (v) : στοιβάζω stowage (n) : στοίβασμα, στοίβαγμα stowaway (np) : λαθρεπιβάτης streak (n) : λευκός αφοός, λωρίδα stroke (n): διαδρομή εμβόλου, 2-stroke engine : δίχρονος κινητήρας 4-stroke engine : τετράχρονος κινητήρας strong breeze : ισχυρός (άνεμος) strong gale : θύελλα structure (n) : หατασκευή stunted (part) : περιορισμένος **submarine** (**n**, adj) : υποβούχιο submerge (v) : καταδύομαι, χώνομαι, χώνω κάτω από την επιφάνεια της θάλασσας submerged : σκεπασμένος με νερό ευρισκόμενος κάτω από την επιφάνεια της θάλασσας, βυθισμένος subsequently (adv) : μετά ταύτα, μεταγενέστερα substance (n) : ουσία suction (n) :  $\alpha v \alpha \rho \rho \delta \phi \eta \sigma \eta$ , suction pump (n) : αντλία αναρροφήσεως sufficient (adj) : αρκετός, επαρκής **sugar** (**n**) : ζάχαρη **sun** (**n**) : ήλιος sundry (adj) : διάφορος sunny (n) : ηλιόλουστος superimposed (adj) : υπεουψωμένος superstructure (n) : υπερκατασκεύασμα πλοίου supervise (v) : επιθεωρώ supply tank (n) : δεξαμενή εφοδιασμού surface (n) : επιφάνεια surface chart : χάρτης καιρού επιφάνειας surge (n) : μεγάλο κύμα, ταχύς κυματισμός survey (v, n) : εξετάζω, επιθεωρώ, επιθεώρηση, έρευνα, ανασκόπηση survey vessel : πλοίο που διεξάγει έρευνα **survival** (**n**) : επιβίωση survive (v) : επιβιώνω survivor (n) : επιζών sustain (v) : στηρίζω, συντηοώ, δυναμώνω suspend (v) : αναρτώ, επικρέμαμαι, αιωρούμαι, αναστέλλω, βάζω σε διαθεσιμότητα suspension (n) : ανάρτηση sustenance (n) : συντήρηση swell (n) : αποθαλασσία, φουσχοθαλασσιά (χυματισμός που παραμένει μετά τη λήξη της αιτίας που τον προκάλεσε), κυματισμός που προχαλείται από τη διέλευση άλλου πλοίου. no swell *low swell (short/average) :* ευθαλασσία (low swell *long*) : γαλήνη (*moderate* swell average length) :  $\sigma\dot{\alpha}$ λος, τριχυμία (moderate swell long) :  $\varepsilon \pi i \sigma \alpha \lambda o \zeta$ , φουρτούνα (moderate swell short) : xvματιστός (heavy swell short/average) : κλυδώνιο, μεγάλη φουρτούνα (heavy swell long) : μαινόμενη, χοντρή φουρτούνα (confused swell) : παράφοοη, άγρια θάλασσα swing (n, v) : ταλάντωση, ρευμάτισμα πλοίου, αιώρηση, κούνια, αιωρούμαι



switch on (v) : ανάβω (φως) synopsis (n) : σύνοψη, περίληψη synoptic chart (n) : μετεωρολογικός χάρτης sway (v) : ταλαντεύομαι swim (n, v) : κολύμπι, κολυμπώ

### Tt

tackle (v) : επιχειρώ, πιάνω, αντιμετωπίζω taint (v) : μολύνω/ομαι take on (v) : προσλαμβάνω take into account (v) : λαμβάνω υπόψη tally (v) : καταμετρώ, ταιριάζω, συμφωνώ tallyman (np) : σημειωτής φορτίου tandem (adj) : ο ένας πίσω από τον άλλο tanker (n) : δεξαμενόπλοιο, πετρελαιοφόρο telegraph (n) : τηλέγραφος, τηλεγραφώ tendency (n) : τάση terminate (v) : τερματίζω test (v, n) : ελέγχω, δοκιμάζω, δοκιμή, έλεγχος thermostat (n) : θερμοστάτης thick (adj) : παχύς thin (adj) : ελαφούς, λεπτός thrust (v, n) : προωθώ, πίεση, ώθηση, ώση thunder (n) : κεραυνός hunderstorm : καταιγίδα με κεραυνούς tighten (v) : σφίγγω, κάνω στεγανό tiller (n) : δοιάχι, λαγουδέρα timber (n) :  $\xi v \lambda \epsilon i \alpha$ tin (n) : κασσίτερος, κονσέρβα tonne (metric) : μετρικός τόνος, μονάδα βάρους ίση με 1000 χλγ.

ton (Long Ton) : τόνος, μονάδα βάρους που ισοδυναμεί με 2240 λίβρες ή 1016 χλγ. tonnage (n) : χωρητικότητα πλοίου tool (n) :  $\varepsilon \circ \gamma \alpha \lambda \varepsilon \circ \delta$ tow (n,v) : ουμουλχούμενο πλοίο, ουμουλκώ tow-line (n) :  $\sigma x o v (x o \eta \sigma u o - v)$ ποιούμενο για τη ουμούλκηση πλοίων towage : ουμούλκηση, τέλη ουμουλκήσεως tow-boat (n) : ουμουλκό σκάφος **tower** (**n**) : πύργος towing (n) : ουμούλκηση towing light : φανός ρυμουλκήσεως towing signal : σήμα ουμουλκήσεως towing vessel (n) : ουμουλκό toxic (adj) : τοξικός tramp (n) : αλήτης, πλάνης, εμπορικό πλοίο ελεύθερου ναύλου transfer (v) : μεταφέοω, μεταβιβάζω transmission (n) : μετάδοση, μεταβίβαση, εκπομπή transmit (v) : εκπέμπω, μεταβιβάζω transmitter (n) : πομπός transom (n) : ζυγό πούμνης, επίπεδη πούμνη πλοίου, άβαξ (χν. παπαδιά) transverse (adj) : εγκάρσιος tray (n) : δίσκος trim (n): διαγωγή πλοίου, ευθέτηση φορτίου (χν. χαπιάρισμα) trip (n) : ταξιδάχι (συνήθως αναφέρεται με συγκεκριμένο προορισμό), διαδρομή trireme (n) : τοιήσης truck (n) : φορτηγό αυτοχίνητο tug (n,v) : ουμουλκό σκάφος, ουμουλκώ

**tug boat (n) :** ουμουλκό **turbo charger (n) :** στροβιλοσυμπιεστής **twin (adj) :** διπλός, δίδυμος **twin screw ship :** πλοίο με δύο έλικες / προπέλες **typhoon (n) :** τυφώνας

#### Uu

uncertainty (n) : αβεβαιότητα, ανασφάλεια, κίνδυνος unload (v) : ξεφορτώνω update (v) : εκσυγχρονίζω, ενημερώνω urgency (n) : κατεπείγουσα ανάγκη utilization (n) : χρησιμοποίηση

### Vv

**vacancy** (**n**) : κενή θέση valid (adj): έγκυρος, ισχύων valve (n) :  $\beta\alpha\lambda\beta\delta\alpha$ vary (v) : ποικίλλω veer (v) : (για αέρα) υποστρέφω, αναστρέφω κατά πρύμνη, αλλάζω κατεύθυνση **vehicle** (**n**) : όχημα velocity (n) : ταχύτητα ventilate (v) :  $(\epsilon\xi)\alpha\epsilon\rho(\zeta\omega)$ ventilation (n) :  $(\epsilon\xi)\alpha\epsilon\rho\iota\sigma\mu\delta\varsigma$ version (n) : εκδοχή, μοντέλο vessel (n) : πλοίο, σκάφος **VHF (Very High Frequency) :** πολύ υψηλή συχνότητα vibration (n) : χραδασμός vicinity (n) : εγγύτητα, γειτνί- $\alpha \sigma \eta$ viscosity (n) : το ιξώδες, ιξότης visibility (n) : ορατότητα visible (adj) : ορατός **volume** (**n**) : όγκος voyage (n) : θαλασσινό ταξίδι, maiden voyage: παρθενικό ταξίδι

#### Ww

warn (v) : προειδοποιώ warning (n) : προειδοποίηση warship (n) : πολεμικό πλοίο waste (v, n) : σπαταλώ, άχρηστο, σπαταλημένο, χαμένο από διαρροή ή απροσεξία waste rags (n) : στουπιά watch (n) : βάρδια, φυλακή (*middle watch*) : 12-4  $\pi$ . $\mu$ . (*morning watch*) : 4-8  $\pi$ . $\mu$ . (forenoon watch) : 8-12  $\pi$ .µ. (afternoon watch) :  $12-4 \mu.\mu$ . (evening watch) :  $4-8 \mu.\mu$ . a) first dog watch :  $4-6 \mu.\mu$ . b) second dog watch : 6-8 μ.μ. (*first watch*) : 8-12 μ.μ. watch officer (n) : αξιωματικός βάρδιας waterline (n) : ίσαλος γραμμή waterproof (adj) : αδιάβοοχος watertight (adj) : στεγανός

**wavelet** (**n**) : μικρό κύμα wear (n, v) : φθορά από χρήση, φθείοω weather (n) : καιρός weigh / heave up the anchor (v): ανασπώ την άγκυρα, βιράρω, σαλπάρω weld (v) : συγκολλώ μέταλλα welding (n) : συγκόλληση west (adj, n) : δυτικός, δύση, δυτικός άνεμος, πουνέντες wet air : υγρασία whaler (n) : φαλαινοθηρικό whistle (v, n) : σφυρίζω, σφυοίχτρα white horse (n) : προβατάχι (στη θάλασσα) whole gale : ισχυρή θύελλα wide (adj) : ευρύς, φαρδύς **willingness** (**n**) : προθυμία wind (n) : άνεμος windlass (n) : εργάτης άγκυρας (μανουβέλο / μπόμπα) wine (n) : κρασί wireless telegraphy : ασύοματος τηλεγραφία workpiece (n) : δοχίμιο εργα-



σίας, αντικείμενο για επεξεργασία wreck (n) : ναυάγιο wrench (n) : κλειδί

### Xx

**xebec (n) :** τύπος ιστιοφόρου (μπελού), λιβυρνίς (σκάφος ακτοφυλακής)

### Yy

yacht (n) : θαλαμηγός yaw (v) : εκπίπτω της πορείας μου (το πλοίο λόγω ανέμου ή ρεύματος στρέφεται άλλοτε δεξιά και άλλοτε αριστερά)

### Zz

**zenith (n) :** ζενίθ **zone time (n) :** συμβατική ώρα ζώνης

### Contents

#### **Basic Verb Patterns**

1	Be (am, is, are)	1	
	Be (was, were)	5	
	There is, there are, there was, there were	8	
	Have got, has got, had got	10	
5	General Practice	13	
-			
	Tenses		
6	Present Continuous/Present		
	(present actions, descriptions)	15	
7	Simple Present (states, habits, systems		
	and processes)	19	
8	Simple Past (Past events)	22	
9	Past Continuous	27	
10	Simple Future (shall/will), Going to		
	S. Present & Present C. as Future	31	
11	Present Perfect Simple (unfinished past		
	+ for/since), already, never, ever	36	
12	General Practice (units 6-11)	40	
	Have/Modals		
13	Have	43	
14	Modals: can, could (ability, requests,		
	permission);		
	would (polite request) should (advice);		
	must (obligation), mustn't (prohibition)	47	
15	General Practice (13-14)	53	
	Verb Forms		
16	Imperatives (commands, informal		
	requests)	55	
17	Passive Voice	59	
18	Conditionals (Type 0, Type 1, Type 2)	63	
19	Question Tags	66	
20	Gerunds & Infinitives;		
	Like (like+infinitive, like+gerund,		
	would like)	68	
21	Direct & Reported Speech: Simple		
	statements, questions and commands:		
	say, tell, ask	71	
22	<b>General Practice (16-21)</b>	75	
	Interneting a		
	Interrogatives		

23	Question words (What, What+noun,	
	Who, Where, When,)	7

#### Nouns

		INOUIIS	
	24	Singular/Plural, Regular/Irregular Forms,	0.0
	25	Compound Nouns Countable/Uncountable Nouns, Abstract	80
2	23	Nouns	85
3			
		Pronouns	
		Possesives (Genitive with of/apostrophe)	87
	27	Personal (Subject/Object), Possessive,	
5	•	Reflexive	89
	28	Impersonal It, There;	02
	20	Demonstratives: this, that, these, those	93 97
7	29	General Practice (23-28)	97
		Determiners	
	30	Article a/an + Countable, Article the	
	50	+ Countable/Uncountable, No Article	99
5			//
)		Adjectives	
	31	Cardinal/Ordinal Numbers	103
		Quantitative (some, any, no, much,	
}		many, etc.)	108
	33	Adjectives/Adverbs: Comparative and	
		Superlative; Regular and Irregular	111
7		Adverbs	
		Manner, Time, Frequency	114
	35	<b>General Practice (30-34)</b>	117
		A	
	20	Prepositions	
)	36	Location (at, in, on, inside, outside, over, next to), Time (at, in, on, during,	
}		throughout, over), Direction (to, into,	
)		out of, from, over)	119
	37	Practice in Miscellaneous Prepositions	124
		Prepositional Phrases	125
}		F control	
		Connectives	
	39	And, but, or (coordinating), because	
!		(subordinating)	128
)			

#### **Punctuation**

	40	Apostrophe, colon, comma, full	
		stop/period, question mark, capitalization	130
77	41	General Practice (36-40)	133

### Some Communicative English

42 Meeting people	135
43 Telephoning	136
44 Invitations	137
45 Personal information/Permission	138
46 Meaning and Spelling/Help and	
directions	139
Appendix One	
1 List of Lune sule a yearly	140

1 List of Irregular verbs 140

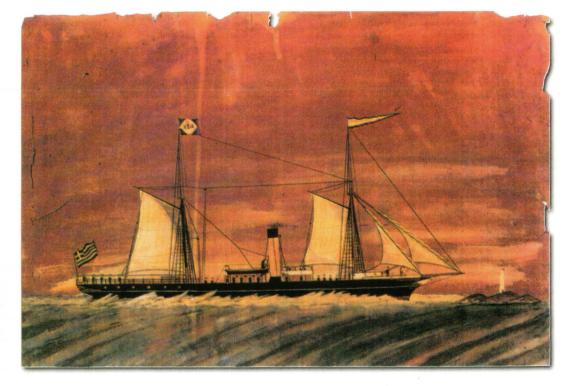
### Appendix Two

2	Counties and Nationalities	144
3	Appendix Three Colours and shapes	145
4	Appendix Four	146

4 Glossary 146







Το α/π "ΠΑΝΕΛΛΗΝΙΟΝ" της Ελληνικής Ατμοπλοΐας. Ένα από τα τρία πρώτα σκάφη που αγόρασε ο Αλέξ. Μαυροκορδάτος το 1855 από την Αγγλία.